

# PORTABLE QUAD-BAND MOBILE PHONE

User Manual
Please read this manual before operating your
phone and keep it for future reference.



## **Intellectual Property**

All Intellectual Property, as defined below, owned by or which is otherwise the property of Samsung or its respective suppliers relating to the SAMSUNG Phone, including but not limited to, accessories, parts, or software relating there to (the "Phone System"), is proprietary to Samsung and protected under federal laws, state laws, and international treaty provisions. Intellectual Property includes, but is not limited to, inventions (patentable or unpatentable), patents, trade secrets, copyrights, software, computer programs, and related documentation and other works of authorship. You may not infringe or otherwise violate the rights secured by the Intellectual Property. Moreover, you agree that you will not (and will not attempt to) modify, prepare derivative works of, reverse engineer, decompile, disassemble, or otherwise attempt to create source code from the software. No title to or ownership in the Intellectual Property is transferred to you. All applicable rights of the Intellectual Property shall remain with SAMSUNG and its suppliers.

#### **Open Source Software**

Some software components of this product, including but not limited to 'PowerTOP' and 'e2fsprogs', incorporate source code covered under GNU General Public License (GPL), GNU Lesser General Public License (LGPL), OpenSSL License, BSD License and other open source licenses. To obtain the source code covered under the open source licenses, please visit:

#### http://opensource.samsung.com.

## **Disclaimer of Warranties; Exclusion of Liability**

EXCEPT AS SET FORTH IN THE EXPRESS WARRANTY CONTAINED ON THE WARRANTY PAGE ENCLOSED WITH THE PRODUCT, THE PURCHASER TAKES THE PRODUCT "AS IS", AND SAMSUNG MAKES NO EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTY OF ANY KIND WHATSOEVER WITH RESPECT TO THE PRODUCT, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE MERCHANTABILITY OF THE PRODUCT OR ITS FITNESS FOR ANY PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR USE; THE DESIGN, CONDITION OR QUALITY OF THE PRODUCT; THE PERFORMANCE OF THE PRODUCT; THE WORKMANSHIP OF THE PRODUCT OR THE COMPONENTS CONTAINED THEREIN; OR COMPLIANCE OF THE PRODUCT WITH THE REQUIREMENTS OF ANY LAW, RULE, SPECIFICATION OR CONTRACT PERTAINING

T999\_UM\_MR2\_English\_UVLH2\_PS\_110612\_F7

THERETO. NOTHING CONTAINED IN THE INSTRUCTION MANUAL SHALL BE CONSTRUED TO CREATE AN EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTY OF ANY KIND WHATSOEVER WITH RESPECT TO THE PRODUCT. IN ADDITION, SAMSUNG SHALL NOT BE LIABLE FOR ANY DAMAGES OF ANY KIND RESULTING FROM THE PURCHASE OR USE OF THE PRODUCT OR ARISING FROM THE BREACH OF THE EXPRESS WARRANTY, INCLUDING INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, OR LOSS OF ANTICIPATED PROFITS OR BENEFITS.

SAMSUNG IS NOT LIABLE FOR PERFORMANCE ISSUES OR INCOMPATIBILITIES CAUSED BY YOUR EDITING OF REGISTRY SETTINGS, OR YOUR MODIFICATION OF OPERATING SYSTEM SOFTWARE.

USING CUSTOM OPERATING SYSTEM SOFTWARE MAY CAUSE YOUR DEVICE AND APPLICATIONS TO WORK IMPROPERLY

SAFE<sup>TM</sup>: "SAFE<sup>TM</sup>" (Samsung for Enterprise) is a mark for a Samsung device which has been tested against Samsung's own internal criteria for interoperability with certain third party security-related solutions for MDM and VPN. The testing includes field testing with local network connection and menu tree testing which tests functionality of the solutions in conjunction with the Samsung device. During the testing, the device is tested with the security solutions to see if the solutions work with the device as described by the third party security solution providers. The testing, for example, includes field testing with local network connection and menu tree testing which tests functionality of the solutions in conjunction with the Samsung device. For more information about Samsung's SAFE<sup>TM</sup> program, please refer to <a href="https://www.samsung.com/us/safe">www.samsung.com/us/safe</a>.

Disclaimer of Warranties: EXCEPT AS OTHERWISE PROVIDED IN THEIR STANDARD END USER LICENSE AND WARRANTY, TO THE FULL EXTENT PERMITTED BY LAW SAMSUNG ELECTRONICS CO., LTD., SAMSUNG TELECOMMUNICATIONS AMERICA, LLC, AND THEIR AFFILIATES (COLLECTIVELY REFERRED TO HEREIN AS THE "SAMSUNG ENTITIES") EXPRESSLY DISCLAIM ANY AND ALL WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING ANY WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, INTEROPERABILITY OR NON-INFRINGEMENT, WITH RESPECT TO INFORMATION TECHNOLOGY SECURITY PROTECTION, SAFETM DEVICES AND APPLICATIONS TESTED WITH SAFETM DEVICES. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE SAMSUNG ENTITIES BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INCIDENTAL, PUNITIVE, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OF ANY KIND WHATSOEVER WITH RESPECT TO INFORMATION TECHNOLOGY SECURITY PROTECTION, SAFETM DEVICES OR APPLICATIONS TESTED WITH SAFETM DEVICES. In

addition, information technology security protection will be affected by features or functionality associated with, among other things the e-mail platform, master data management, and virtual private network solutions selected by the software provider, solution provider or user. Choice of an e-mail, master data management, and virtual private network solution is at the sole discretion of the software provider, solution provider or user and any associated effect on information technology security protection is solely the responsibility of the software provider, solution provider or user. For complete statement of limited warranty, please refer to <a href="www.samsung.com/us/safe">www.samsung.com/us/safe</a>, available on the web and where Samsung smartphone and Galaxy Tab<sup>TM</sup> devices are sold. [101212]

# Samsung Telecommunications America (STA), LLC

Headquarters:

1301 E. Lookout Drive

Richardson, TX 75082

**Customer Care Center:** 

1000 Klein Rd.

Plano, TX 75074

Toll Free Tel: 1.888.987.HELP (4357)

Internet Address:

http://www.samsung.com

<sup>©2012</sup> Samsung Telecommunications America, LLC. Samsung is a registered trademark of Samsung Electronics Co., Ltd.

Do you have questions about your Samsung Mobile Device?

For 24 hour information and assistance, we offer a new FAQ/ARS System (Automated Response System) at:

www.samsung.com/us/support

Nuance<sup>®</sup>, VSuite<sup>™</sup>, T9<sup>®</sup> Text Input, and the Nuance logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Nuance Communications, Inc., or its affiliates in the United States and/or other countries.

ACCESS<sup>®</sup> and NetFront™ are trademarks or registered trademarks of ACCESS Co., Ltd. in Japan and other countries.

The Bluetooth® word mark, figure mark (stylized "B Design"), and combination mark (Bluetooth word mark and "B Design") are registered trademarks and are wholly owned by the Bluetooth SIG.

microSD™ and the microSD logo are Trademarks of the SD Card Association.

Openwave® is a registered Trademark of Openwave, Inc.

Google, the Google logo, Android, the Android logo, Google Play, Gmail, Google Mail, Google Maps, Google Music, Google Talk, Picasa. YouTube and other marks are trademarks of Google Inc.

Wi-Fi is a registered trademark of the Wireless Fidelity Alliance, Inc.

Swype and the Swype logos are trademarks of Swype, Inc. © 2010 Swype, Inc. All rights reserved.

PIVA , DivX®, DivX Certified® and associated logos are trademarks of Rovi Corporation or its subsidiaries and are used under license.

DivX Certified<sup>®</sup> to play DivX<sup>®</sup> video up to HD 720p, including premium content.

ABOUT DIVX VIDEO: DivX<sup>®</sup> is a digital video format created by DivX, LLC, a subsidiary of Rovi Corporation. This is an official DivX Certified<sup>®</sup> device that plays DivX video. Visit <a href="https://www.divx.com">www.divx.com</a> for more information and software tools to convert your files into DivX videos.

ABOUT DIVX VIDEO-ON-DEMAND: This DivX Certified<sup>®</sup> device must be registered in order to play purchased DivX Video-on-Demand (VOD) movies. To obtain your registration code, locate the DivX VOD section in your device setup menu (tap **Apps** > **Settings** > **About device** > **Legal information** > **License settings** > **DivX® VOD** > **Register**). Go to <u>vod.divx.com</u> for more information on how to complete your registration.

## **Dynamic Noise Suppression from Audience**

Your phone is equipped with an advanced voice processing chip that delivers clear mobile calls by suppressing background noise, intermittent sounds (like a siren or nearby conversation), and echoes, allowing you to hear and be heard nearly anywhere.

#### **How Does It Work?**

Based on the intelligence of the human hearing system, the technology:

- Captures, evaluates and distinguishes all the sound signals surrounding your phone, and the person you're speaking with.
- Then isolates the primary voice in conversation and filters out the background noise so the person you're calling hears only your voice, without disturbing background noise.
- Dynamically equalizes and adjusts voice volume to optimize your calling experience, so you can hear clearly and don't need to speak louder to overcome surrounding noise.

The noise suppression technology is built-in and already enabled in your new mobile phone. So it's ready to provide unsurpassed voice clarity with every call.

# **Table of Contents**

Section 1: Getting Started	/
Understanding this User Manual	. 7
Battery Cover	. 8
Battery	12
Extending Your Battery Life	15
Initial Device Configuration	16
Switching the Device On or Off	17
Restarting the Device	18
Locking and Unlocking the Device	18
Creating a New Google Account	18
Signing into Your Google Account	19
Retrieving your Google Account Password	19
Confirming the Default Image and Video	
Storage Location	20
Creating a Samsung Account	
Voice Mail	22
Visual Voicemail	23
Task Manager	24

Section 2: Understanding Your Device25
Features of Your Device
Front View
Back View
Side Views
Device Display 30
Status Bar
Function Keys
Home Screen
Applications
Screen Navigation 51
Using Gestures
Menu Navigation
Customizing the Screens 57
Section 3: Memory Card65
Using the SD Card
SD card Overview 65

Section 4: Call Functions and	Using the Samsung Keyboard93
Contacts List69	Using Predictive Text
Displaying Your Phone Number69	Using the Google Voice Typing
Making a Call69	Section 6: Contacts102
Ending a Call70	Accounts
Making Emergency Calls	Contacts List
Dialing Options	Finding a Contact
Answering a Call	Contact List Options
Managing Reject Calls	Contact Menu Options110
International Calls	Contact Entry Options111
Pause Dialing75	Joining Contact Information
Wait Dialing	Sending a Namecard114
Redialing the Last Number76	Copying Contact Information116
Speed Dialing77	Synchronizing Contacts
Using S Voice	Display Options117
Wi-Fi Calling79	Adding more Contacts via Accounts
In Call Options	and Sync118
Logs Tab	Additional Contact Options
Section 5: Entering Text92	Groups
Text Input Methods	The Favorites Tab122
Selecting the Text Input Method92	
Entering Text Using T9 Trace	

Section 7: Messages123	Photo Editor
Types of Messages 123	The Gallery
Creating and Sending Messages 124	Using the Video Player
Message Options	Media Hub
Viewing Newly Received Messages 127	Play Movies
Deleting Messages 129	Play Music
Message Search	Music Player
Messaging Settings	Using Playlists
Text Templates	Creating a Playlist
Using Email	Transferring Music Files 187
Microsoft Exchange Email (Outlook) 137	Removing Music Files
Using Google Mail	Music Hub 188
Google Talk 145	AllShare Play
ChatON	AllShare Cast Hub194
Google +	T-Mobile TV
Messenger	YouTube
Section 8: Multimedia149	Section 9: Applications and
Assigning the Default Storage Location 149	<b>Development202</b>
Using the Camera	Applications
Camera Options	Access T-Mobile
Sharing Pictures 156	AllShare Play
Using the Camcorder	Amazon

Calculator	205	Mobile HotSpot218
Calendar	205	More Services
Camera	206	Music Hub
ChatON	206	Music Player218
Clock	207	My files
Contacts	207	Navigation
Downloads	207	Phone
Dropbox	207	Play Books
Email	209	Play Movies
Flipboard	210	Play Music
Gallery	210	Play Store
Game Hub	210	Downloading a New Google Application 224
Gmail	210	Launching an Installed Google Application 225
Google +	211	S Memo
Internet	211	S Suggest228
Kies air	211	S Voice229
Latitude	211	Samsung Apps229
Local	214	Search
Maps	215	Settings
Media Hub	217	T-Mobile Name ID230
Messaging	217	T-Mobile TV
Messenger	218	TecTiles

Talk	Configuring a Desk Clock	263
Task Manager 234	Section 12: Changing Your Settings	264
Video Player	Accessing Settings	264
Visual Voicemail	Wi-Fi Settings	264
Voice Recorder	Bluetooth settings	266
VPN Client	Data Usage	268
YouTube 236	More Settings	269
Section 10: Connections238	Call Settings	277
Internet	Sound Settings	283
Bluetooth	Display Settings	285
Enable Downloading for Web Applications 250	Wallpaper	287
PC Connections	LED Indicator	287
Kies Air 252	Motion Settings	287
Wi-Fi	Power Saving Mode	288
USB Tethering	SD Card & Device Storage	289
Mobile HotSpot	Battery Usage	289
Section 11: Time Management259	Application Manager	
Calendar	Accounts and Synchronization	
Clock	Location Services	293
World Clock	Security and Lock Screen	
Stopwatch	Language and Input Settings	
Setting a Timer	Back up and Reset	308

Accessory
Date and Time
Accessibility Settings
Developer Options
Google Search Settings314
About Device
Section 13: Health and Safety
nformation317
Exposure to Radio Frequency (RF) Signals 317
Specific Absorption Rate (SAR) Certification
Information322
FCC Part 15 Information to User323
Commercial Mobile Alerting System (CMAS) . 324
Smart Practices While Driving324
Battery Use and Safety325
Samsung Mobile Products and Recycling327
UL Certified Travel Charger328
Display / Touch-Screen
GPS & AGPS329
Emergency Calls330
Care and Maintenance331
Responsible Listening332

Operating Environment	.334
FCC Hearing Aid Compatibility (HAC) Regulations for Wireless Devices	.336
Restricting Children's Access to Your Mobile Device	
FCC Notice and Cautions Other Important Safety Information	
Section 14: Warranty Information	
Standard Limited Warranty End User License Agreement for Software	
ndex	354

# **Section 1: Getting Started**

This section explains how to get started with your phone by installing and charging the battery, installing the micro SIM card and optional memory card, and setting up your voice mail.

Before using your device for the first time, you'll need to install and charge the battery and install the micro SIM card.

The micro SIM card is loaded with your subscription details, such as your PIN, available optional services, and many other features. If desired, you can also install an SD card to store media for use with your phone.

# **Understanding this User Manual**

The sections of this manual generally follow the features of your phone. A robust index for features begins on page 354. Also included is important safety information that you should know before using your phone. This information is available near the back of the guide, beginning on page 317.

This manual provides navigation instructions according to the default display settings. If you select other settings, navigation may be different.

Unless otherwise specified, all instructions in this manual assume you are starting from the Home screen and using the available keys.

**Note:** Instructions in this manual are based on default settings, and may vary from your phone, depending on the software version on your device, and any changes to the phone's Settings.

Unless stated otherwise, instructions in this User Manual start with the device unlocked, at the Home screen.

All screen images in this manual are simulated. Actual displays may vary, depending on the software version of your device and any changes to the device's Settings.

#### **Special Text**

Throughout this manual, you'll find text that is set apart from the rest. These are intended to point out important information, share quick methods for activating features, to define terms, and more. The definitions for these methods are as follows:

- Notes: Presents alternative options for the current feature, menu, or sub-menu.
- **Tips**: Provides quick or innovative methods, or useful shortcuts.
- Important: Points out important information about the current feature that could affect performance.
- Warning: Brings to your attention important information to prevent loss of data or functionality, or even prevent damage to your phone.

#### **Text Conventions**

This manual provides condensed information about how to use your phone. To make this possible, the following text conventions are used to represent often-used steps:

→ Arrows are used to represent the sequence of selecting successive options in longer, or repetitive, procedures. Example: From the Home screen, press (Menu) → Settings → Bluetooth.

## **Battery Cover**

The battery, micro SIM card and SD card are installed under the battery cover.

Important! Before removing or replacing the battery cover, make sure the device is switched off. To turn the device off, hold down the key until the power-off image displays, then tap Power off.

Caution! Do not bend or twist the back cover excessively during installation or removal. Doing so may damage the cover.

#### To remove the battery cover:

- Hold the device firmly and locate the cover release latch.
- **2.** Place your fingernail in the opening and firmly "pop" the cover off the device (similar to a soda can).



#### To replace the battery cover:

 Position the battery cover over the battery compartment and press down until you hear a click.

#### SIM Card Overview

Important! Before removing or replacing the micro SIM card, make sure the device is switched off. To turn the phone off, hold down the key until the power-off image displays, then tap Power off.

The micro SIM card is loaded with your subscription details such as your telephone number, PIN, available optional services, and many other features.

Important! The micro SIM card and its information can be easily damaged by scratching or bending, so be careful when handling, inserting, or removing the card. Keep all SIM cards out of reach of small children.

Some features on your device (such as Wi-Fi Calling) can be unlocked by using the new micro SIM card.

To use this new micro SIM card, call or contact T-Mobile customer service for more information.

This card contains the necessary information for identifying and authenticating the user to the IMS (IP Multimedia Subsystem).

#### Installing and Removing the SIM card

This device uses a different type of SIM card called a "micro SIM". Other larger SIM cards will not function or fit within this slot.

#### To install the SIM card:

1. Carefully slide the micro SIM card into the SIM card socket until it clicks into place.



Make sure that the card's gold contacts face into the phone and that the upper-left angled corner of the card is positioned as shown.

#### To remove the micro SIM card:

- 1. Remove the battery cover.
- Carefully place your fingernail into the end of the micro SIM slot and push the card slightly out.
- Carefully slide the card out of the micro SIM card socket.

Note: If the card is not inserted correctly, the device will not detect it and no service will be available. If this happens, turn off the device, remove the card, and reinstall the card in the correct orientation.

## **Installing the microSD Memory Card**

Your device supports an optional (external) microSD™ or microSDHC™ memory card for storage of media such as music, pictures, video and other files. The SD card is designed for use with this mobile device and other devices.

Note: microSD memory cards include capacities of up to 2GB. microSDHC™ memory card types can range from 4GB to up to 64GB.

Note: This device supports up to a 64GB microSDHC memory card. The device comes in either a 16GB or 32GB model.

- 1. Remove the battery cover.
- Locate the microSD card slot on the inside of the device.
- 3. Orient the card with the gold strips facing down.
- Carefully slide the microSD card into the card socket until it clicks into place. For more information on how to use the SD card see "Using the SD Card" on page 65

**Important!** Be sure to align the gold contact pins on the card with the phone's contacts.



## Removing the microSD Memory Card

- 1. Remove the battery cover.
- Firmly press the card into the slot and release it. The card should pop partially out of the slot.
- 3. Remove the card from the slot.
- 4. Replace the battery cover.

## **Battery**

Before using your device for the first time, install the battery and charge it fully.

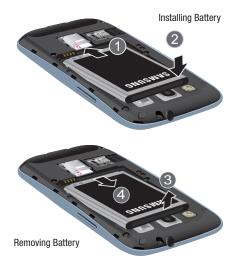
Important! Before removing or replacing the battery, make sure the device is switched off. To turn the device off, hold down the key until the power-off image displays, then tap Power off.

## **Installing the Battery**

- Slide the battery into the compartment (1) so that the tabs on the end align with the slots at the bottom of the phone, making sure the connectors align.
- **2.** Gently press down to secure the battery (2).

## Removing the Battery

 Grip the battery at the top end (3) and lift it up and out of the battery compartment (4).



#### **Charging the Battery**

Your device is powered by a rechargeable Li-ion battery. A wall charger, which is used for charging the battery, is included with your device. Use only approved batteries and chargers. Ask your local Samsung dealer for further details. Before using your device for the first time, you must fully charge the battery. A discharged battery recharges fully in approximately 4 hours.



Note: Verify that the battery is installed prior to connecting the wall charger. If both the wall charger is connected and the battery is not installed, the handset will power cycle continuously and prevent proper operation. Failure to unplug the wall charger before you remove the battery, can cause the device to become damaged.

**Important!** It is recommended you fully charge the battery before using your device for the first time.

- Connect the USB cable to the charging head.
- 2. Locate the Charger/Accessory jack.
- Insert the USB cable into the device's Charger/ Accessory jack.
- 4. Plug the charging head into a standard AC power outlet. The device turns on with the screen locked and indicates both its charge state and percent of charge.

Warning! While the device is charging, if the touch screen does not function due to an unstable power supply unplug the USB power adapter from the power outlet or unplug the USB cable from the device.



Note: This illustration displays both the correct and incorrect orientation for connecting the charger. If the charger is incorrectly connected, damage to the accessory port will occur therefore voiding the phone's warranty.

5. When charging is finished, first unplug the charger's power plug from the AC wall outlet, then disconnect the charger's connector from the phone.

Important! If your handset has a touch screen display, please note that a touch screen responds best to a light touch from the pad of your finger or a non-metallic stylus. Using excessive force or a metallic object when pressing on the touch screen may damage the tempered glass surface and void the warranty. For more information, refer to "Standard Limited Warranty" on page 341.

#### **Low Battery Indicator**

When the battery level is low and only a few minutes of talk time remain (~15% charge), a warning tone sounds and the "Battery low" message repeats at regular intervals on the display. In this condition, your device conserves its remaining battery power, by dimming the backlight.

When the battery level becomes too low, the device automatically turns off.

The on-screen battery charge is represented (by default) as a colored battery icon. You can also choose to display a percentage value. Having a percentage value on-screen can provide a better idea of the remaining charge on the battery.

■ Press → Image and then tap Settings → Display
 → Display battery percentage.

For more information, refer to "Display Settings" on page 285.

## **Extending Your Battery Life**

Active applications, light levels, Bluetooth usage, and GPS functionality all act to drain your battery. The following is a list of helpful tips that can help conserve your battery power:

- · Reduce your backlight on time.
- Turn Bluetooth off when not in use.
- Turn Wi-Fi off when not in use.
- Deactivate the GPS when not needed. Most applications using this function will periodically query the GPS satellites for your current location; each query drains your battery.
- Do not wait until your battery is completely depleted before charging your device. Repeating this process of a complete discharge and recharge can over time reduce the storage capacity of any battery.
- Turn off Automatic application sync.
- Use the Power Savings Widget to deactivate hardware functions such as Wi-Fi, Bluetooth, GPS, Synchronization, or LCD brightness setting.
- Check the Battery use screen to review what features or functions have been consuming your battery resources.

- Check the Running Services and close any unnecessary applications.
- Use the Task Manager feature to end/shutdown background applications that are still running. These minimized applications can, over time, cause your device to "slow down".
- Turn off any streaming services after use (see Running Services).
- Animated wallpapers use processing power, memory, and more power. Change your Live Wallpaper to a non-animated Wallpaper gallery or Gallery image.

# **Initial Device Configuration**

- Select a language from the associated field. English is the default language.
- 2. Tap Start.

**Note:** You may be prompted with a notification that your activation is completed.

- Choose to either Sign in to your existing Google account, Get an account by creating a new one, or Not now to continue.
- Select/deselect the desired Google location services and tap Next.

- If prompted to enable purchases, enter your credit card information and click Save.
  - or -

Click **Skip** to continue without entering this information.

- Select your Backup and Restore settings by placing a check mark alongside the associated field and tap Next.
- Enter a First and Last name then tap Next. This will help to identify this as your device.
- Read and agree to the Google services notice by tapping Next.
- **9.** Tap **Finish** to complete the setup process.
- Follow the on-screen tutorials to learn how to navigate the screens.

Note: Enabling Google location services can drain battery power.

**11.** Read the on-screen System Manager Application information.

Note: This software collects only diagnostic data from your device so that T-Mobile technicians can better troubleshoot issues with your device.

Select either More Info.. (to read additional information) or Close to close the message screen.

Important! Selecting Close only closes the current description scree and does not disable data collection.

To disable data collection, go to Settings → Back up and reset → Collect diagnostics and turn off the Allow Diagnostics feature. For more information, refer to "Collect Diagnostics" on page 309.

13. When prompted with the Dropbox activation screen, you can choose to either: Create a new dropbox account, I already have an account, Disclaimer, or tap No thanks to continue.

Note: For more information, refer to "Dropbox" on page 207.

14. Go through the on-screen tutorial.

## **Switching the Device On or Off**

Once the device has been configured, you will not be prompted with setup screens again.

 Press and hold (Power/End) until the device switches on.

The device searches for your network and after finding it, you can make or receive calls.

Note: The display language is preset to English at the factory. To change the language, use the Language menu. For more information, refer to "Language and Input Settings" on page 302.

- Press and hold (Power/End) until the Device options screen appears.
- 3. Tap Power off ( $\bigcirc$ )  $\rightarrow$  0K

## **Restarting the Device**

- Press and hold (Power/End) until the Device options screen appears.
- 2. Tap Restart ( $) \rightarrow 0K$ .

## **Locking and Unlocking the Device**

By default, the device screen locks when the backlight turns off.

 Place your finger on the screen and swipe the glass in any of the directions shown unlock the device.

**Note:** You can choose to configure lock settings to prevent unauthorized use of your device. For more information, refer to "Security and Lock Screen" on page 294.



# **Creating a New Google Account**

You should create a Google TM Account when you first use your device in order to fully utilize the functionality. This account provides access to several device features such as Gmail, Google Maps, Google Talk, and the Play Store TM applications. Before you are able to access Google applications, you must enter your account information. These applications sync between your device and your online Google account.

#### To create a new Google Account from your phone:

- From the Home screen, tap (Play Store).
- 2. Read the introduction and tap New to begin.
- Follow the on-screen instructions to create a Google Account.

- or -

If this is not the first time you are starting the device, tap  $\Longrightarrow$  (Gmail).

Note: If you already have a Google account, you only need to sign in.

#### To create a new Google Account from the Web:

- From a computer, launch a Web browser and navigate to <u>www.google.com</u>.
- On the main page, click Sign-in → Create an account for free
- Follow the on-screen prompts to create your free account.
- Look for an email from Google in the email box you provided, and respond to the email to confirm and activate your new account.

## **Signing into Your Google Account**

- 1. Launch an application that requires a Google account (such as Play Store or Gmail).
- 2. Click Existing.
- Tap the Email and Password fields and enter your information.
- Tap Sign in. Your device communicates with the Google servers to confirm your information.
- If prompted, create a new Gmail username by entering a prefix for your @gmail.com email address.

# Retrieving your Google Account Password

A Google account password is required for Google applications. If you misplace or forget your Google Account password, follow these instructions to retrieve it:

- From your computer, use an Internet browser and navigate to <a href="http://google.com/accounts.">http://google.com/accounts.</a>
- 2. Click on the Can't access your account? link.
- 3. Follow the on-screen password recovery procedure.

# Confirming the Default Image and Video Storage Location

Although the device is configured to store new pictures and videos to the Memory card, it is a very good idea to confirm this location before using your device.

Important! Too many users can overlook this storage destination until something goes wrong. It is recommended that you verify this location or change it before initiating the use of the camera or camcorder features.

- I. From the Home screen, tap 🐚 (Camera).
- From the viewfinder screen, tap scroll down to the Storage entry.
- Tap this entry and select the desired default storage location for newly taken pictures or videos. Choose from: Phone or Memory card.

Note: It is recommended that you set the option to Memory card.

**4.** Press to return to the Home screen.

## **Creating a Samsung Account**

Just as important as setting up and activating a Google account to help provide access to Maps, Latitude, Play Store, etc.. An active Samsung account is required to begin accessing applications such as Chat On and AllShare Play.

Note: The Samsung account application will manage your access to the previously mentioned applications, and there is no longer a need to remember different passwords for each application.

- 1. Tap and tap any of the above mentioned applications (such as AllShare Play).
  - -or-

In a single motion, touch and drag the Status bar down to the bottom of the screen to reveal the Notifications panel and tap (Samsung account).

- If you have previously created a Samsung account, tap Sign in.
  - or -

If this is your first time, tap Create new account.

- Tap Terms and conditions and Privacy policy to read the legal disclaimers and related information.
- If you agree to the terms, place a green check mark in the I accept all the terms above field and tap Agree.
- 5. Enter your the required information and tap Sign up.

**Note:** You may be prompted to confirm your credentials via email.

Verify your account via email by accessing the email address provided during setup and following the steps outlined to complete your registration.

- or -

If you have already setup your email account on the device, tap **Go to Mailbox** and follow the on-screen instructions.

- or -

If you have already verified your email address, tap

Activate account.

Note: Confirm the Samsung account icon no longer appears in the Notifications area at the top of the screen.

Confirm the Samsung account icon no longer appears in the Notifications area at the top of the screen.

Note: Without confirming your email address and following the documented procedures, related applications will not function properly since it is Samsung account that is managing their username and password access.

#### Voice Mail

## Setting Up Your Voice Mail

Your device automatically transfers all unanswered calls to voicemail, even if your device is in use or turned off. As soon as your battery is charged and the micro SIM card inserted, activate your voicemail account.

**Important!** Always use a password to protect against unauthorized access.

For new users, follow the instructions below to set up voice mail:

Note: Voicemail setup may be different depending on your network.

- From the Home screen, tap and then touch and hold the seven will the device dials voicemail.
   You may be prompted to enter a password.
- Follow the tutorial to create a password, a greeting, and a display name.

## **Accessing Your Voice Mail**

You can access your Voice Mail by either pressing and holding 1 on the keypad, or by using the phone's Application icon, then tapping the Voice Mail application. To access Voice Mail using the menu:

From the Home screen, tap and then touch and hold 1 ∞ until the device dials voicemail.

Note: Touching and holding will launch Visual voicemail if it is already active on your device.

When connected, follow the voice prompts from the voicemail center.

#### **Accessing Your Voice Mail From Another Phone**

- 1. Dial your wireless phone number.
- 2. When you hear your voicemail greeting, press the asterisk key on the phone you are using.
- Enter your passcode.

#### **Visual Voicemail**

Visual Voicemail enables users to view a list of people who left a voicemail message, and listen to the any message they want without being limited to chronological order.

- From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (Visual Voicemail).
- 2. Read the on-screen information and tap Next.
- Read the on-screen information and tap Done. A list of the voicemail messages displays.

Important! If this is your first time to access Visual Voicemail, you may be prompted to enter a new PIN code and tap Next to activate Visual Voicemail.

Note: You must subscribe to Visual Voicemail service to use this feature. Charges may apply. Please contact your service provider for further details.

4. Tap an on-screen voicemail message to play it back.

#### To check Visual Voicemail messages:

- From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (Visual Voicemail).
- 2. Tap the voicemail message you want to play.
- **3.** Tap (Play).

#### To delete Visual Voicemail messages:

- From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (Visual Voicemail).
- 2. Tap the voicemail message you want to delete.
- Tap ( Delete ) → OK.

## **Task Manager**

Your device can run applications simultaneously, with some applications running in the background.

Sometimes your device might seem to slow down over time, and the biggest reason for this are background applications. These are applications that were not properly closed or shutdown and are still active but minimized. The Task Manager not only lets you see which of these applications are still active in the background but also easily lets you choose which applications are left running and which are closed.

Note: The larger the number of applications running on your phone, the larger the energy drain on your battery.

## Task Manger Overview

- Press and hold (Home) then tap Task manager.
  This screen contains the following tabs:
  - Active applications display those currently active applications running on your phone.

- Downloaded displays any installed packages or applications from the Play Store that are taking up memory space. Tap Uninstall to remove them from your phone.
- RAM, which displays the amount of current RAM (Random Access Memory) currently being used and allow you to Clear Memory.
- Storage displays a visual graph indicating the available and used space within the System storage, USB storage, and external SD card.
- Help provides additional battery saving techniques.

## Shutting Down an <u>Cur</u>rently Active Application

- 1. Press and hold (Home) then tap Task manager.
- 2. From the **Active applications** tab, tap **End** to close selected applications.
  - or -

Tap **End all** to close all background running applications.

# **Section 2: Understanding Your Device**

This section outlines key features of your device. It also describes the device's keys, screen and the icons that display when the device is in use.

#### **Features of Your Device**

Your device is lightweight, easy-to-use and offers many significant features. The following list outlines a few of the features included in your device.

- Touch screen with virtual (on-screen) QWERTY keyboard
- High Speed Packet Access Plus (HSPA+) delivering data speeds faster than the current 3G network technology.
- 4.8" HD Super AMOLED® screen (1280x720)
- Android v 4.0, Ice Cream Sandwich Platform
- TecTile™ compliant
- Support for Gestures (Screen Shot, Quick pause, Quick Rotate, Tap to Top of List, Missed Event Alert, and Camera Quick Access)
- Wi-Fi <sup>®</sup> Capability
- USB Tethering-capable

- Over 450,000 Apps available to download from the Google Play™ Store
- AllShare<sup>®</sup> Play to share your media content across DLNA certified device. AllShare Cloud connectivity enabled via the use of an external Web storage service
- AllShare<sup>®</sup> Group Cast screen sharing
- Compliant with AllShare Cast Hub<sup>®</sup>
- 8 Megapixel Camera and Camcorder with autofocus and digital zoom
- 1.9 Megapixel Front Facing camera for Video Chat
- Share Shot picture sharing functionality
- S-Beam and Android Beam file transfer technology
- Share Shot camera sharing-capable via multi-connect Wi-Fi Direct connection
- Bluetooth enabled
- NFC tag-compatible
- Full Integration of Google Mobile™ Services (Gmail, YouTube, Google Maps, Google Voice Search)

- Multiple Messaging Options: Text/Picture/Video Messaging, and Instant Messaging with Windows Live Messenger, Google Talk™ and Yahoo! Messenger
- Corporate and Personal Email
- Music Player with multitasking features
- Pre-loaded e-reader applications such as: Play Books™
- Assisted GPS (Google Navigation)
- · Webkit-based browser
- Expandable memory slot supports up to 64GB microSD
- Mobile HotSpot Capability
- USB Tethering-capable
- T-Mobile<sup>®</sup> TV
- Video Chat via Google Talk
- Google Play<sup>TM</sup> Music
- · Compatibility with a new micro SIM card
- . Wi-Fi Calling via the use of a micro SIM card
- Access to thousands of Movies and TV Shows with the Samsung Media Huh

- HD Video Player 1080p
- Codec: MPEG4, H.264, H.263, VC-1, WMV7/8, VP8, MP43
- Format: 3GP (MP4), WMV (ASF), AVI, and DivX
- Video Player support for PIP (Picture in Picture) viewing
- DivX Certified<sup>®</sup> to play DivX<sup>®</sup> video up to HD 720p, including premium content
- Kies Air to wirelessly sync your PC with your phone via a Wi-Fi<sup>®</sup> connection

#### **Front View**

The following illustrations show the main elements of your device. The following list correlates to the illustrations.

- Headset jack allows you to connect a hands-free headset so you can listen to music.
- Indicator light illuminates with a series of distinct colors and flashing patterns to indicate different notifications and statuses. Events include Charging, Low battery, and Missed event:
  - Powering on **blue** blinks/animates
  - Battery Charging red remains on
  - Battery Fully Charged green remains on.
  - Low Battery or Charging Error- red blinks/animates
  - Missed Notification (Call or Messaging) orange blinks/ animates

For more information, refer to "LED Indicator" on page 287.



- Menu key displays a list of options available for the current screen. From the Home screen it displays Edit, Create folder, Search, and Settings options.
- 4. Home key displays the Home screen when pressed. Press and hold to display your recent apps, Task manager, and Remove all option. Double-press to activate S Voice.
- USB Power/Accessory connector allows you to connect a power cable or optional accessories such as a USB/ data cable.
- 6. Microphone is used during phone calls and allows other callers to hear you clearly when you are speaking to them. There are two microphones on the device:
  - Bottom microphone: used during handset mode.
  - Top microphone: used while an active call is in the speakerphone mode and assists in noise cancellation (2 microphone solution).
- Back key redisplays the previous screen or clears entries.

- Display shows all the information needed to operate your phone, such as the connection status, received signal strength, phone battery level, and time.
- **9. Front Facing Camera** allows you to take pictures while facing the screen and allows you to video conference.
- 10. Proximity Sensor detects how close an object is to the surface of the screen. This is typically used to detect when your face is pressed up against the screen, such as during a phone call.
  - While talking on the phone, the sensor detects talk activity and locks the keypad to prevent accidental key presses.
- 11. Light Sensor lets you use the ambient light level to adjust the screen brightness/contrast. This sensor decreases screen brightness in dim light.
  - In a bright light condition (outdoors), the sensors cause the device to increase the brightness and contrast for better viewing.
  - In dim light conditions, the device increases the screen brightness to compensate.
- Receiver allows you to hear the other caller and the different ring tones or sounds offered by your phone.

#### **Back View**

The following illustration shows the external elements of your Device:

- 1. microSD Card Slot (internal) allows you use a microSD card to expand the memory of your device.
- micro SIM Card Slot (internal) Installation location for SIM card.

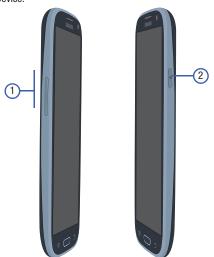


- External speaker allows you to hear ringers, music, and other sounds offered by your phone.
- 4. Camera lens is used to take photos.

5. Flash is used to take photos in low-light conditions.

#### **Side Views**

The following illustration shows the side elements of your Device:



- 1. Volume key allows you to adjust the ringer volume in standby mode (with the phone open) or adjust the voice volume during a call. When receiving an incoming call:
- Power/End key ends a call or switches the phone off and on. Press and hold for two seconds to turn toggle the Silent mode or Airplane mode states, turn the device on or off. or Restart.

Pressing the volume key down mutes the ring tone.

## **Device Display**

Your display provides information about the device's status, and is the interface to manage features. The display indicates your connection status, signal strength, battery status and time. Icons display at the top of the device when an incoming call or message is received and also alerts you at a specified time when an alarm was set. The screen also displays notifications, and Application (or shortcut) bar with five primary shortcuts: Phone, Contacts, Messaging, Internet, and Apps.



## Display settings

In this menu, you can change various settings for the for the wallpaper, cube, brightness or backlight.

From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (Settings) → Display. For more information, refer to "Display Settings" on page 285.

## **Status Bar**

The Status Bar shows information about the connection status, signal strength, phone battery level, and time, and displays notifications about incoming messages, calls and other actions.

This list identifies the icons you see on your phone's display screen:

#### **Indicator Icons**

This list identifies the symbols you'll see on your device's display and Indicator area:

Note: Some Notification icons can be hidden manually by toggling the status of the Notification panel function. For more information, refer to "Accessing Additional Screen Functions" on page 37.



Displays your current signal strength. The greater the number of bars, the stronger the signal.



Indicates that the Airplane Mode is active. You cannot send or receive any calls or access online information.



Indicates there is no signal available.



Displays when there is no SIM card in the phone.



Displays when there is a system error or alert.



Displays when a call is in progress. Icon is displayed in the Status bar area.



Displays when a call is on hold. Icon is displayed in the Status bar area.



Displays when an active call is routed through a Bluetooth headset. Icon is displayed in the Status bar area



Displays when you have missed an incoming call.



Displays when you device is set to automatically reject calls from your Reject list or all calls.



Displays when the speakerphone is on. Icon is displayed in the Status bar area.



Displays when the microphone is muted. Icon is displayed in the Status bar area.



Displays when Call forwarding is set to Always forward. Displayed in the Status bar when the current call is minimized. For more information, refer to "Configuring Additional Voice Call Settings" on page 280.



Displays your current battery charge level. Icon shown is fully charged.



Displays when the current battery is 100 percent charged and the Display battery percentage option is enabled within the **Settings** → **Display** menu.



Displays your battery is currently charging.



Displays your current battery charge level is low (Charge: ~28% - 15%).



Displays your current battery charge level is very low (Charge: ~15% - 5%).



Shows your current battery only has up to 4% power remaining and will soon shutdown. (Charge: ~4% - 1%).



Displays when connected to the EDGE network.



Displays when your phone is communicating with the EDGE network.



Displays when connected to the 3G network. 3G indicator is only seen when roaming.



Displays when your phone is communicating with the 3G network. 3G indicator is only seen when roaming.



Displays when connected to the HSPA+ network.



Displays when your phone is communicating with the HSPA+ network



Displays when the phone has detected an active USB connection and is in a USB Debugging mode.



Displays when there is a new text message.



Displays when an outgoing text message has failed to be delivered.



Displays when there is a new voicemail message.



Displays when there is a new visual voicemail message.



Displays in the notifications window when there is a new Email message.



Displays in the notifications window when there is a new Gmail message.



Displays when a new Google+ notification has been received.



Displays when the T-Mobile Name ID application did not recognize a recent number and would like to know whether you wish to Not add, or add as a New or Existing number.



Displays when the time and date for a Calendar Event has arrived. For more information, refer to "Calendar" on page 259.



Displays when an alarm is set. For more information, refer to "Setting an Alarm" on page 261.



Displays when the device is in Silent mode. All sounds except media and alarms are silenced, and Silent mode is set to **Vibrate**. For more information, refer to "Silent mode via Device Options Screen" on page 283.



Displays when the device is in Silent mode.

All sounds are silenced, and Silent mode is set to

Mute.



Displays when data synchronization and application sync is active and synchronization is in progress for Gmail, Calendar, and Contacts.



Displays when Bluetooth technology is active and enabled.



Displays when Bluetooth technology is active and there is an available open and visible bluetooth device.



Displays when the Bluetooth technology is active and communicating with an external device.



Displays when the an outbound file transfer is in progress.



Displays when a file or application download is in progress.



Displays when a file is being uploaded or sync'd between your device and an external Web storage location.



Displays when the uploaded or transferred file was successfully delivered.



Displays when the Share shot option is enabled from within the Camera Shooting mode menu and images and being shared via Wi-Fi Direct.
For more information, refer to "Camera Options" on page 151.



Displays when a screen capture has been taken and stored in the clipboard.

For more information, refer to "Using Gestures" on page 54.



Displays when your device is connected being used to control streaming media and is connected to a Digital Living Network Alliance (DLNA) certified device using the AllShare Play application.



Displays when your device is currently sharing/ streaming media to paired device using the AllShare Play application.



Displays when AllShare Cast Hub is active, connected to your device, and communicating. For more information, refer to "AllShare Cast Hub" on page 194.



Displays when updates are available for download.



Displays when a Play Store download has completed.



Displays when Wi-Fi is connected, active, and communicating with a Wireless Access Point (WAP).



Displays when Wi-Fi is active and there is an available open wireless network.



Displays when Wi-Fi Direct is active and configured for a direct connection to another compatible device in the same direct communication mode.



Displays when Wi-Fi Direct is communicating with another compatible device.



Displays when the USB Tethering mode is active and communicating. For more information, refer to "USB Tethering" on page 256.



Displays when Wi-Fi is being used as a Mobile HotSpot feature is active and communicating. For more information, refer to "Mobile HotSpot" on page 257.



Displays when a share shot has been established with other users via a Wi-Fi Direct connection.



Displays when the Wi-Fi calling feature is active. Minutes used while connected to the Wi-Fi network count against available rate plan minutes.



Displays when the Wi-Fi calling feature is active and you are using it with within your current active call.



Displays when there is an error in the use or 911 registration of the Wi-Fi Calling feature.



Displays when you are currently in Emergency calling mode. You must exit this mode to resume normal calling function.



Displays in the notifications window when action is required within the Samsung account application.



Displays in the notifications window when there are too many on-screen notification icons to display. Tap to show more notifications.



Tap to select a text input method.



Displays in the notifications window when a song is currently playing within the Music Player.



Displays in the notifications window when a song is currently playing within the Play Music application.



Displays when your device's GPS is on and communicating.



Displays when the external SD card (internal microSD) has been disconnected (unmounted) from the phone and is now ready for either removal or formatting.



Displays when the External SD card is being prepared for mounting to the device. This is required for communication with the External SD card.



Displays when the microSD card has been improperly removed or unexpectedly.



Displays when Power saving mode is enabled.



Displays when the Power saving alert notification has been activated. You are then prompted to view your current battery level.



Displays when TTY device has been inserted.

For more details on configuring your phone's settings, see "Changing Your Settings" on page 264.

#### **Notification Bar**

The Notification area indicates new message events (data sync status, new messages, calendar events, call status, etc). You can expand this area to display the Notification screen that provides more detailed information about the current on-screen notification icons.

- Touch the Status bar to reveal the Notifications tab, and then drag the tab to the bottom of the screen to open the Notifications screen (1).
- **2.** Tap a notification entry to open the associated application (2).



## **Clearing Notifications**

- In a single motion, touch and drag the Status bar down to the bottom of the screen to open the Notifications screen.
- Tap Clear. The notifications are cleared from the panel.

## **Accessing Additional Screen Functions**

In addition to notifications, this screen also provides quick and ready access to separate device functions. These can be quickly activated or deactivated by toggling them on or off.



The following functions can either be activated (green) or deactivated (gray): Wi-Fi, Bluetooth, GPS, Sound/Vibrate/Mute, Screen rotation, Power saving, Airplane mode, Driving mode, or Sync.

# **Function Keys**

Your device comes equipped with three main function keys that can be used on any screen: **Home**, **Menu**, and **Back**.

## **Home Key**

The **Home** key ( ) takes you back to your Home screen (#4 of the 7 available screens).

 Press and hold to launch the Recent apps/Task manager screen. For more information, refer to "Accessing Recently-Used Applications" on page 57.

## Menu Key

The **Menu** key ( ) activates an available menu function for the current screen or application.

# **Back Key**

The **Back** key () returns you to the previously active screen. If the on-screen keyboard is currently open, this key closes the keyboard.

## **Home Screen**

The Home screen is the starting point for using the applications on your phone. There are initially seven available panels, each populated with default shortcuts or applications. You can customize each of these panels.



- Notification area displays those icons associated with end-user notifications such as: email messages, calls (missed, call in progress), new voicemail, upcoming event, USB connection, Emails, and Text/MMS messages.
- These notifications appear at the top-left of the screen (within the Status bar area) and display important user information.
- This information can be accessed by swiping down from the Status bar (page 36).
- Status area displays those icons associated with the status of the device such as communication, coverage, Bluetooth, 4G/3G, Wi-Fi communication, battery levels, GPS, etc.
- Home Screen is a customizable screen that provides information about notifications and device status, and allows access to application Widgets.
- Extended Home Screens extend beyond the current visible screen width to provide more space for adding icons, widgets, and other customization features.
  - There are six available extended screens (panels) each of which may be populated with its own shortcuts or widgets.
     These screens share the use of the five Primary Shortcuts.

 The current screen is indicated at the bottom by a white square.
 Up to seven (7) total screens are available.

**Note:** Both the status bar and primary shortcuts are visible across all screens.

- Google search is an on-screen Internet search engine powered by Google™. Tap to access the Voice Actions feature where you can verbally enter a search term and initiate an online search.
  - Tap (Voice Actions) to launch the function from within this Google widget.
- Widgets are self-contained on-screen applications (not shortcuts). These can be placed onto any of the available screens (Home or extended).
- Shortcuts are icons that launch available device applications such as Camera, YouTube, Voice talk, Contacts, Phone, Email, Play Store, etc. These function the same as shortcuts on your computer.
  - Although some may already be found on the Extended Home screens, the majority can also be found within the Applications screens

- The Application screens can be accessed by tapping (Apps) from the Primary shortcuts area.



- Shortcuts can be removed from a screen and added back any number of times.
- Primary Shortcuts: are four shortcuts present throughout all of the available screens and can be used to both navigate within the device or launch any of the following functions:
  - Phone ( ) launches the phone-related screen functions (Keypad, Logs, Favorites, and Contacts).
  - Contacts ( ) launches the Contacts-related screens (Phone, Groups, Contacts, and Favorites).
  - ) launches the Messaging menu (create new - Messaging ( messages or open an existing message string).
  - Internet ( ) launches the built-in Web browser.
  - Apps toggles functionality between the Home and Application screens.
    - Tap (Apps) to access the Application screens loaded with every available local application.
    - While in the Applications screens, tap (Back) to easily return to the Home screen.

As you transition from screen to screen, a screen indicator (located at the bottom) displays the currently active panel.

## **Home Screen Menu Settings**

When on the Home screen, the following menu options are available:

- Edit page allows you to add or remove extended screens from your device. You can have up to six extended screens (one Home screen and six Extended screens).
- Create folder allows you to create on-screen folders to help organize files of application shortcuts.
- Search displays the Google Search box that you can use to search for a key term online.
- Settings provides guick access to the device's settings menu.
  - The Settings menu can also be accessed by pressing and then tapping



# **Applications**

The Application menu provides quick access to the most frequently used applications. Applications display on each of the three panels on the Applications screens.

Important! Once you log into your Google account. All previously downloaded apps should now be populated within the Application screens.

# **Application Screen Menu Settings**

When on the Apps screen, the following menu options are available:

- 1. Press and then tap (Apps).
- 2. Press and then select from the following options:
  - Play Store: provides quick access to the Play Store (page 223).
  - Edit: allows you to add a new folder to the Application screen and then drag/drop an existing application into it. This feature requires the view be set to Customizable view.
  - Uninstall: allows you to uninstall a user-downloaded application. Only those applications that are not default to the device can be downloaded. Tap to remove the selected app.

- Downloaded applications: allows you to filter the view of apps to only those applications that you have downloaded.
- View type: allows you to customize the way the Apps menu listing is shown (page 61).
- **Share apps**: allows you to share information about selected applications with external users (page 59).
- Hide applications: allows you to specify which current applications are hidden from view in this menu. Once you have selected the apps, tap Done.
- Show hidden applications: allows you to specify which previously hidden applications are can be made visible again for viewing in this menu. Once you have selected the apps, tap Done.
- 3. Press to return to the Home screen.

The following table contains a description of each application available via both the Primary shortcuts area and via the Applications screens. If the application is already described in another section of this user manual, then a cross reference to that particular section is provided. For information on navigating through the Applications icons, see "Navigating Through the Application Menus" on page 56



### Access T-Mobile

This application provides you online access to account information such as your current activity, billing information, service plans, downloads, and other information.

For more information, refer to "Access T-Mobile" on page 202.



## **AllShare Play**

Allows you to share your on-device media content with other external devices using DLNA (Digital Living Network Alliance) and built-in AllShare Play<sup>TM</sup> technology.

For more information, refer to "AllShare Play" on page 203.



#### Amazon

Provides access to Amazon.com via a built-in mobile application.

For more information, refer to "Amazon" on page 204.



#### Calculator

Found within the Utility application, this launches the on-screen calculator application. The calculator provides the basic arithmetic functions; addition, subtraction, multiplication, and division. You can also use this as a scientific calculator.

For more information, refer to "Calculator" on page 205.



#### Calendar



Launches a calendar application that syncs to your Facebook™, Google™, or Microsoft Exchange work calendars.

For more information, refer to "Calendar" on page 259.



#### Camera

Launches the built-in 8.0 megapixel camera application from where you can take a picture with either the front or rear facing cameras.

**Note:** A micro SD card is no longer needed to take pictures or shoot video due to built-in storage.

Note: The default storage location is your phone. It is recommended that you store your pictures and videos on a microSD card. If something were to occur to the device, your files are still protected.

In addition to taking photos, the built-in camera also doubles as a camcorder that also allows you to record, view, and send high definition videos.

For more information, refer to "Using the Camera" on page 150. For more information, refer to "Using the Camcorder" on page 164.



#### ChatON

Provides a global mobile communication service where you can chat with more than 2 buddies via a group chat. Share things such as pictures, videos, animation messages (Scribbles), audio, Contacts, Calendar entries, and Location information.

For more information, refer to "ChatON" on page 145.



### Clock

Allows you to set an alarm, configure and view the World clock, use a stopwatch, set a timer, or Desk clock. The applications display in a tabular format and quickly accessed with the touch of a finger.

For more information, refer to "Clock" on page 207.



#### Contacts

The default storage location for saving phone numbers to your Contacts List is your phone's built-in memory.

For more information, refer to "Contacts List" on page 103.



#### Downloads

Provides quick access to tabs containing a list of your current downloaded files (Internet and Other).

For more information, refer to "Downloads" on page 207.



### **Dropbox**

Provides access to your desktop files directly from your device.

For more information, refer to "Dropbox" on page 207.



### **Email**

Provides access to both your Outlook (Exchange Server-based) work email and Internet email accounts (such as Gmail and Yahoo! Mail).

For more information, refer to "Using Email" on page 133.



### Flipboard

This application creates a personalized digital magazine out of everything being shared with you. Access news stories, personal feeds and other related material.

For more information, refer to "Flipboard" on page 210.



## Gallery

Displays a Gallery of camera images and video stored in the microSD card.

For more information, refer to "The Gallery" on page 171.



#### **Game Hub**

Provides a premium one-stop service center that let's you play, connect and share games on compatible Samsung Android devices.

For more information, refer to "Game Hub" on page 210.



#### Gmail

Provides access to your Gmail account. Google Mail (Gmail) is a web-based email service. Gmail is configured when you first set up your phone. For more information, refer to "Using Google Mail" on page 143.



## Google +:

This application makes messaging and sharing with your friends a lot easier. You can set up Circles of friends, visit the Stream to get updates from your Circles, use Messenger for fast messaging with everyone in your Circles, or use Instant Upload to automatically upload videos and photos to your own private album on Google+. For more information, refer to "Google +" on page 147.



#### Internet

Open the browser to start surfing the web. The browser is fully optimized and comes with advanced functionality to enhance the Internet browsing feature on your phone.

For more information, refer to "Internet" on page 238.



#### Kies air

Allows you to sync your Windows PC wirelessly with your phone (as long as both are on the same Wi-Fi network). You can now have real-time access of your phone through your PC to view call logs, videos, photos, bookmarks, IMs, and even send SMS messages directly from your home computer. For more information, refer to "Kies Air" on page 252.



#### Latitude

Lets you see your friends' locations and share yours with them. The application also lets you see your friends' locations on a map or in a list. It also lets you send instant messages and emails, make phone calls, and get directions to your friends' locations.

For more information, refer to "Latitude" on page 211.



#### Local

Displays company locations as markers on Google Maps. When viewing an area you can quickly locate a business or person, find out more information about the business, see coupons, public responses, and more.

For more information, refer to "Local" on page 214.



#### Maps

Launches a Web-based dynamic map that helps you find local businesses, locate friends, view maps and get driving directions.

For more information, refer to "Maps" on page 215.



#### Media Hub

Provides you with a one stop shop for the hottest movie and TV content. You can now rent or purchase your favorite content and then watch it from the convenience of anywhere.

For more information, refer to "Media Hub" on page 175.



# Messaging

Provides access to text and multimedia messaging (SMS and MMS).

For more information, refer to "Creating and Sending Messages" on page 124.



### Messenger:

Allows you to bring groups of friends together into a simple group conversation. When you get a new conversation in Messenger, Google+sends an update to your phone.

For more information, refer to "Messenger" on page 148.



### Mobile HotSpot

Provides access to the Tethering and portable HotSpot menu where you can use either the USB tethering or portable hotspot functionality.

For more information, refer to "Mobile HotSpot" on page 218.



#### **More Services**

Provides access to additional Samsung Apps and services. Works in conjunction with the Samsung Apps feature.

For more information, refer to "More Services" on page 218.



### Music Hub

Allows you to purchase and download songs.

For more information, refer to "Music Hub" on page 188.



### Music Player

Launches the built-in Music player that allows you to play music files that you have stored on your microSD card. You can also create playlists.

For more information, refer to "Music Player" on page 184.



## My files

Lets you view supported image files and text files on both your internal storage and microSD card. Organize and store data, images, and more in your own personal file folders. Files are stored to either the internal storage or memory card in separate (user defined) folders.

For more information, refer to "My files" on page 219.



### Navigation

Launches a Web-based navigation application.

Caution! Traffic data is not real-time and directions may be wrong, dangerous, prohibited, or involve ferries.

For more information, refer to "Navigation" on page 220.



#### Phone

Provides the ability to make or answering calls, access the Contacts list, which is used to store contact information.

For more information, refer to "Call Functions and Contacts List" on page 69.



### **Play Books**

Provides access to read over 3 million ebooks on the qo.

For more information, refer to "Play Books" on page 222.



### **Play Movies**

Rent movies on Google Play<sup>™</sup> and watch instantly using the Google Play Movies app.

For more information, refer to "Play Movies" on page 178.



## Play Music (Google Music)

Launches the built-in Google Music Player that allows you to play music files that you have both downloaded from Google Music and stored on your microSD card.

For more information, refer to "Play Music" on page 178.



## Play Store:

Formerly known as the "Android Market", it provides access to downloadable applications, games, music, and movies. The Play Store also allows you to provide feedback and comments about an application, or flag an application that might be incompatible with your phone.

For more information, refer to "Play Store" on page 223.



#### S Memo

This application allows you to create memos using the keypad, your finger, or both. You can add images, voice recordings, and text all in one place.

For more information, refer to "SMemo" on page 226.



## S Suggest

Provides on-screen recommendations for applications that are specifically supported and made for use on your device.

For more information, refer to "S Suggest" on page 228.



### S Voice

Launches your phone's built-in voice recognition system that allows you to initiate several common tasks without having to touch the phone. Features include: Call, Text, Navigate, Play music, Memo, and Driving mode.

For more information, refer to "Using S Voice" on page 78.



## Samsung Apps

Allows you to easily download an abundance of applications to your device. This includes games, news, reference, social networking, navigation, and more.

For more information, refer to "Samsung Apps" on page 229.



#### Search

Provides an on-screen Internet search engine powered by Google<sup>TM</sup>.



## Settings

Accesses the device's built-in Settings menu. For more information, refer to "Changing Your Settings" on page 264.



#### T-Mobile Name ID

Allows you to modify the on-screen Caller ID information.



#### T-Mobile TV

Allows you to watch live mobile TV on your device. This application is a subscription service.

For more information, refer to "T-Mobile TV" on page 230.



### Talk

Launches a Web-based Google Talk application that lets you chat and video conference with family and friends over the Internet for free.

For more information, refer to "Google Talk" on page 145.



### Video Player

Launches your device's built-in video application that plays video files stored on your microSD card.

For more information, refer to "Using the Video Player" on page 171.



#### Visual Voicemail

Visual Voicemail enables users to view a list of people who left a voicemail message, and listen to the any message they want without being limited to chronological order.

For more information, refer to "Visual Voicemail" on page 23.



#### Voice Recorder

Found within the Utility application, allows you to record an audio file up to one minute long and then immediately send it as a message.

For more information, refer to "Voice Recorder" on page 235.



#### VPN Client

This is a full-featured VPN Client that provides support for the latest IPSec VPN standards and provides interoperability with support for all major VPN Gateways.

For more information, refer to "VPN Client" on page 236.



#### YouTube

Launches the YouTube webpage via the browser. For more information, refer to "YouTube" on page 201.

**Important!** For help closing any or all current applications, use the Task manager. For more information, refer to "Task Manager" on page 234.

# **Screen Navigation**

Using the touch screen display and the keys, you can navigate the features of your device and enter characters. The following conventions are used in this manual to describe the navigation action in the procedures.

## **Navigating Through the Screens**

The following terms describe the most common hardware and on-screen actions.

 Press and hold: Pressing relates to use of the hardware keys and buttons to select or activate an item. For example: press the Navigation key to scroll through a menu. Some buttons and keys require you to press and hold them to activate a feature, for example, you press the Lock key to lock and unlock the phone.

Press and hold

Tap

Touch and hold







- Tap: Use a brief touch to select items on the display or to enter text on the virtual QWERTY keyboard. For example: touch an Application icon to open the application. A light touch works best.
- Touch and hold: Touch and hold an icon or key to open the available options, or to access a pop-up menu. For example: press and hold from the Home screen to access a menu of customization options.
- Flick: Move your finger in lighter, quicker strokes than swiping.
   This finger gesture is always used in a vertical motion, such as when flicking through contacts or a message list.
- Swipe or slide: Quickly drag your finger vertically or horizontally across the screen. This allows you to move the area of focus or to scroll through a list. For example: slide your finger left or right on the Home screen to scroll among the seven panels.
- Drag: Press and hold your finger with some pressure before you start to move it. Do not release your finger until you have reached the target position.
- Rotate: Automatically change the screen orientation from portrait to landscape by turning the device sideways. For example: rotate to landscape orientation when entering text, to provide a larger keyboard, or when viewing web content to minimize scrolling.



Swipe or slide and Drag



Rotate

- Pinch: "Pinch" the screen using your thumb and forefinger to zoom out when viewing a picture or a Web page. (Move fingers inward to zoom out.)
- Spread: "Spread" the screen using your thumb and forefinger to zoom in when viewing a picture or a Web page. (Move fingers outward to zoom in.)



Pinch (Zoom Out)



Spread (Zoom In)

**Note:** These screens can be re-arranged in any desired order. For more information, refer to "Customizing the Screens" on page 57.

 Motion Navigation and Activation: The device comes equipped with the ability to assign specific functions to certain device actions that are detected by both the accelerometer and gyroscope.

Note: Motion must be enabled for this feature to be active. For more information, refer to "Motion Settings" on page 287.

# **Using Gestures**

By activating the various gesture features within the Motion menu (page 287), you can access a variety of time saving functions.

#### To activate motion:

- Press → and then tap Settings → Motion → Motion activation.
- 2. Activate the feature by tapping the **Motion activation** field.
- 3. Tap the desired on-screen motion option.

The following is a description some of the most commonly used gestures:



- Direct call: Once enabled, the device will dial the currently displayed on-screen Contact entry as soon as you place the device to your ear.
- Smart alert: Once enabled, pickup the device to be alerted and notified of you have missed any calls or messages.
- **Double tap to top**: Once enabled, double tap the top of the device to be taken to the top of the current on-screen list.
- Tilt to zoom: Once enabled, you must be on a screen where content can be zoomed. In a single motion, touch and hold two points on the display then tilt the device back and forth to zoom in or out.
- Pan to move icon: Once enabled, touch and hold a desired application shortcut icon or widget on the screen. Once it detaches, move the device left or right to migrate it to a new location.
- Pan to browse images Once enabled, touch and hold a desired on-screen image to pan around it. Move the device left or right to pan vertically or up and down to pan horizontally around the large on-screen image.

- Shake to update: Once enabled, shake your device to rescan for Bluetooth devices, rescan for Wi-Fi devices, Refresh a Web page, etc..
- Turn over to mute/pause: Once enabled, mute incoming calls and any playing sounds by turning the device display down on a surface. This is the opposite of the Pickup to be Notified Gesture.
- Palm swipe to Capture: Once enabled, you can capture any
  on-screen information swiping across the screen. In a single
  motion, press the side of your hand on the screen and swipe form
  left to right. The image is then copied to the clipboard.



Palm Swipe to Screen Capture

Palm touch to mute/pause: Once enabled, you can pause any
on-screen video or mute any current sound by simply covering
the screen with your hand. Once you remove your hand from the
screen, the device goes back to normal by either continuing to
play the current video or unmuting the current sound.

# **Menu Navigation**

You can tailor the device's range of functions to fit your needs using both menus and applications. Menus, sub-menus, and features are accessed by scrolling through the available on-screen menus. Your device defaults with seven screens.

# **Navigating Through the Application Menus**

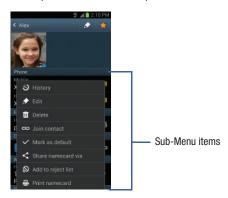
There are three default Application Menu screens available. As you add more applications from the Play Store, more screens are created to house these new apps.

- 1. Press and then tap (Apps). The first Application Menu screen displays.
  - To close the Applications screen, press (Home).
- 2. Sweep the screen to access the other menus.
- **3.** Tap any of the on-screen icons to launch the associated application.

## **Using Sub-Menus**

Sub-menus are available from within most screen and applications.

- Press . A sub-menu displays at the bottom of the screen.
- 2. Tap an available on-screen option.



## **Using Context Menus**

Context menus (also called pop-up menus) contain options that apply to a specific item on the screen. They function similarly to menu options that appear when you right click your mouse on your desktop computer.

 Touch and hold an item on-screen to open its context menu.



## **Accessing Recently-Used Applications**

1. Press and hold to open the recently-used applications window.

**Note:** This recent applications screen also provides access to the **Task manager**.

- **2.** A pop-up displays the six most recently used applications.
- **3.** Tap an icon to open the recent application.

# **Customizing the Screens**

You can customize the Home screens (panels) to display the Widgets, Shortcuts, Folders, or Wallpapers. For example, one screen could contain the Music Player shortcut and other forms of media, while another screen might contain communication apps such as Gmail.

You can customize your Home screen by doing the following:

- Adding, Deleting, and Rearranging screens
- Assigning a New Home screen
- Adding and Removing Primary Shortcuts
- Sharing Application Information
- Managing Shortcuts
- Adding and Removing Widgets
- Changing the Background (Wallpapers)

# **Adding and Deleting Screens**

Your phone comes with seven screens. You can delete these screens and then add them back later.

Note: These screens can be deleted and re-arranged.

**Important!** Your phone can only contain at most seven screens and at least one screen.

### To delete a screen:

- Press → □ and then tap Edit page.
- 2. Touch and hold, then drag the undesired screen down to the Remove tab ( ).
- **3.** Press to return to the main Home screen.

### To add a screen:

- Press → □ and then tap Edit page.
- 2. Tap (Add screen).
  The newly added
  screen appears as the last page.
- 3. Press to return to the main Home screen.



## **Rearranging the Screens**

- 1. Press  $\rightarrow$   $\rightarrow$  and then tap Edit page.
- Touch and hold a screen and then drag it into its new location. Upper-left is screen position #1 and bottomright is screen last screen.

## **Assigning a New Home Screen**

- 1. Press → □ and then tap Edit page.
- Tap (Home screen). The new Home screen then indicates this icon in the upper-right.

# **Sharing an App**

The device's Applications menu now comes with a feature that allows you to share information about your selected applications with external users.

- 1. Press and then tap (Apps).
- 2. Press and then tap Share apps.
- **3.** Place a check mark alongside those applications you wish to share information about and tap **Done**.

**Note:** Shared applications consist of those that have previously been downloaded from the Play Store.

- Select a sharing method. Choose from: Bluetooth, ChatON, Dropbox, Email, Flipboard, Gmail, Google+, Messaging, S Memo, and Wi-Fi Direct.
- The recipient will be notified about the receipt of the new information.

## **Managing Shortcuts**

Note: To move a shortcut from one screen to another, you must carefully touch and hold the shortcut and slowly drag it to the edge of the screen. As the shortcut turns light blue, you can begin to move it to the adjacent screen. If this does not work, delete it from its current screen. Activate the new screen and then add the selected shortcut.

### To add a shortcut from the Applications screen:

😲 🍱 🗎 12:21 PN

- 1. Press to go to the Home screen.
- Select a screen location for your new shortcut by scrolling across your available screens until you reach the desired one.
- 3. Tap Apps ( ) to reveal all your current available applications. By default, applications are displayed as an Alphabetical grid.
- Scroll across the screens and locate your desired application.
- Touch and hold the on-screen icon. The new shortcut then appears to hover over the current screen.
- While still holding the on-screen icon, position it on the current screen. Once complete, release the screen to lock the shortcut into its new position.

#### To add a shortcut via the Add to Home screen:

- 1. Press to go to the Home screen.
- 2. Navigate to a screen with an empty area.
  - 3. Touch and hold an empty area of the screen.
- From the Home screen window tap Add to Home screen
   → Apps.
- 5. Scroll across the pages and tap a selection.

### To delete a shortcut:

- 1. Press to go to the Home screen.
- Touch and hold the desired shortcut. This unlocks it from its location on the current screen.
- Drag the shortcut over the Remove tab ( ) and release it.

## **Adding and Removing Primary Shortcuts**

**Note:** You can change any of your primary shortcuts with the exception of the **Apps** shortcut.

## To remove a primary shortcut:

- 1. Press to go to the Home screen.
- Touch and hold the primary shortcut you want to replace, then drag it to an empty space on any available screen. The primary shortcuts are now updated to show an empty slot.

## To insert a new primary shortcut:

- I. Press and then tap (Apps).
- Locate your desired application, then touch and hold the on-screen icon to position it on a desired screen.
   For more information, refer to "Managing Shortcuts" on page 59.
- Locate the screen with the desired shortcut you want to add as the new primary shortcut.
- Touch and hold the shortcut until it detaches from the screen.
- 5. In a single motion, touch and hold the new shortcut, then drag it to the empty space in the row of primary shortcuts. The new primary shortcut will now appear on both the Home and Extended screens.

## **Adding and Removing Widgets**

Widgets are self-contained applications that can be placed on any screen. Unlike shortcuts, widgets appear as applications.

## To add a Widget:

- 1. Press and then tap (Apps) → Widgets tab.
- 2. Scroll across the Widget pages and locate a desired Widget.
- Touch and hold an available Widget until it detaches from the screen
- While still holding the Widget, scroll left or right across the available screens and let go of the Widget to place it on your current screen.

### To remove a Widget:

- Touch and hold a Widget until it unlocks from the current screen.
- 2. Drag the widget over the **Remove** tab ( ) and release it.
  - As you place the Widget into the Trash, both items turn red.
  - This action doesn't delete the Widget, it just removes it from the current screen.

## To place a widget onto a different screen:

- 1. Touch and hold the widget until it becomes transparent.
- Slowly drag it past the edge of the screen until the adjacent page appears highlighted and it then snaps onto the new page.
- Drag the widget to its desired position on the new screen.
- Repeat these steps to continue moving it to other screens

# **Managing Wallpapers**

Wallpapers consist of either Gallery images (user taken), Live wallpapers (animated backgrounds), or Wallpaper gallery (default phone wallpapers).

**Note:** Selecting animated Live wallpapers will require additional battery power.

## To change the current Home screen wallpaper:

- 1. Navigate to any screen.
  - or –
  - Press to go to the Home screen.
- 2. Touch and hold an empty area of the screen.
- 3. From the Home screen window tap Home screen.
- **4.** Select a Wallpaper type:
  - Tap Gallery to select from a user image stored in the camera image gallery, crop the image, and tap Done.
  - Tap Live wallpapers to select from a list of animated backgrounds, once done tap Set wallpaper.
  - Tap Wallpapers, scroll through the images, tap a wallpaper image, then tap Set wallpaper.

Note: Wallpapers supports the following image types: JPEG, PNG, GIF, BMP, and WBMP.

## To change Wallpapers from Settings Menu:

- Press → and then tap Settings → Wallpaper.
- Access an available option. Choose from Home screen, Lock screen, or Home and Lock screen.

**Note:** The **Home and lock screens** is an additional option that allows you to change both screens at the same time.

- Select a wallpaper type (Gallery, Live wallpaper, or Wallpapers).
- 4. Choose an image and tap Done or Set wallpaper.

## To change the current Lock screen wallpaper:

1. Navigate to any screen, touch and hold an empty area of the screen, and tap **Lock screen**.

- or 
Press → □ and then tap Settings →

Wallpaper → Lock screen.

## 2. Select a Wallpaper type:

- Tap **Gallery** to select from a user image stored in the camera image gallery, crop the image, and tap **Done**.
- Tap Wallpaper, scroll through the images, tap a wallpaper image, then tap Set wallpaper.

# **Section 3: Memory Card**

Your device lets you use a microSD™ (SD) or microSDHC™ card (also referred to as a memory card) to expand available memory space. This secure digital card enables you to exchange images, music, and data between SD-compatible devices. This section addresses the features and options of your device's SD functionality. The device has a USB SD card mode.

- microSD card storage: up to 2GB in size
- SDHC card storage: up to 64GB in size

# **Using the SD Card**

There are several methods for using the SD card:

- 1. Connecting to your PC to store files (such as music, videos, or other types of files and media).
- To activate the camera, video, music player, and other dependant media or applications.

**Important!** Your device can support SDHC cards up to 64GB capacity.

## **SD** card Overview

After mounting an SD card in the device you can use your computer to access and manage the SD card.

**Important!** If access to the external SD card is not available, download and install the USB drivers.

### microSD Icon Indicators

The following icons show your microSD card connection status at a glance:



the card can now safely be removed.



 the card is being prepared for use and for mounting.



the card has been improperly removed.

Important! DO NOT remove a microSD card while the device is accessing or transferring files. Doing so will result in loss or damage of data. Make sure your battery is fully charged before using the microSD card. Your data may become damaged or lost if the battery runs out while you are using the microSD card.

# **Mounting the SD Card**

To store photos, music, videos, and other applications. You must mount (install) the SD card prior to use. Mounting the SD card establishes a USB connection with your computer.

**Important!** You must enable USB storage to mount the SD card.

- 1. Press  $\rightarrow$   $\rightarrow$  and then tap Settings  $\rightarrow$  Storage.
- Tap Mount SD card.

# Communicating with the SD card

- Insert the SD card into the external, SD card slot (For more information, refer to "Installing the microSD Memory Card" on page 11.)
- 2. Verify the card is properly mounted.

Note: Your device is configured to be used as a storage/media device by default. If it does not respond properly, you will need to verify the Debugging mode is not enabled.

- 3. Configure the device for USB storage mode connection by verifying Debugging mode is not enabled:
  - Press → Developer and then tap Settings → Developer options.
  - Remove a check mark from the USB debugging field, if present.
  - For more information, refer to "USB Debugging" on page 312.
- **4.** Connect the USB cable to the phone and connect the cable to the computer.

- 5. Confirm the new mounted drive appears as a new drive on your computer. As soon as the connection is established a drive letter is assigned to the phone's storage device.
- **6.** To disconnect the new drive, simply remove the USB cable from your device.

### **Unmounting the SD card**

Unmounting the SD card prevents corruption and damage to the SD card while removing it from the slot.

- 1. Press  $\rightarrow$  and then tap Settings  $\rightarrow$  Storage.
- 2. Tap Unmount SD card → OK.
- 3. After the "SD card will be unmounted" message displays and the Mount SD card now appears in the menu list, remove the SD card. For more information, refer to "Removing the microSD Memory Card" on page 11.

### **SD** card Memory Status

To view the memory allocation for your external SD card:

■ Press → and then tap Settings → Storage. The available memory displays under both the Total space and SD card headings.

### **Erasing Files from the SD card**

To erase files from the SD card using the device:

- **1.** Ensure the SD card is mounted. For more information, refer to "Unmounting the SD card" on page 67.
- 2. Press → I and then tap Settings → Storage → Mount SD card.
- Tap Format SD card → Format SD card → Delete all to format the SD card. The SD card formats and erases all the data stored on it.

### Factory Data Reset

From this menu you can reset your phone and sound settings to the factory default settings.

- Press → and then tap Settings → Back up and reset.
- Tap Factory data reset. This action erases all data from your device except current system software and bundled applications, or SD card files such as music or photos.

**Note:** This feature provides an option to format the internal USB storage, not the microSD card.

Tap Reset device → Delete all.

# **Section 4: Call Functions and Contacts List**

This section describes features and functionality associated with making or answering calls, and the Contacts list, which is used to store contact information.

# **Displaying Your Phone Number**

■ Press → and then tap Settings → About device → Status. Your phone number displays in the My phone number field.

Note: The device's **Settings** menu can also be activated by pressing and then tapping (Apps) → (Settings).

# **Making a Call**

You can store phone numbers that are regularly used to the SIM card or to the device's memory. These entries are referred to as the **Contacts list**.

- 1. Press and then tap (Phone).
- 2. Enter the phone number and then tap
- If you make a mistake while dialing, tap to clear the last digit. Touch and hold to clear the entire sequence.

Note: When you activate the Auto redial option in the Call settings → Additional settings menu, the device automatically redials up to 10 times when the person does not answer the call or is already on the phone, provided your call is not sent to voicemail.

Note: If your screen goes black during your interaction with the device (Launching Keypad, etc.), you might be accidentally swiping over the front sensors.

### **Quick Dialing a Number from the Contacts List**

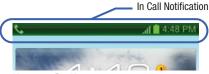
- 1. From the Home screen, tap [2] (Contacts).
- 2. Locate a contact from the list.
- In a single motion, touch and drag your finger over the number by going to the right. This action places a call to the recipient.



# Running a Call in the Background

If you exit the current call screen and return to the Home screen, you are visually notified that you are still on an active call by the green phone icon within the Status bar.

This is the best way to stay on your current call and do something else (multi-task) such as access the Contacts list, view a recent email, locate a picture, etc..



### **Ending a Call**

Briefly tap key to end the call.

Note: To redial a recent number, tap at the end of the call or locate the number from the Logs list, tap the entry and tap Call.

### **Ending a Call from the Status Bar**

- From an active call, you can launch a separate application or return to the Home screen. The current call is kept active in the background.
- Tap the Status bar to reveal the Notifications tab, and then drag the tab to the bottom of the screen to open the Notifications panel (1).
- 3. Tap End to end the currently active call (2).



# **Making Emergency Calls**

If you do not have a SIM card installed the first time you turn on the phone, the **Insert SIM card to make calls** message displays and an animated tutorial shows you how to install the SIM card

Without a SIM card, you can only make an emergency call with the phone; normal cell phone service is not available.

# Making an Emergency Call Without a SIM card installed

- Tap Emergency call from the on-screen display to make an emergency call.
- 2. Enter 9-1-1 and tap Complete your call.

  During this type of call, you will have access to the Speaker mode, Keypad, and End Call features.

**Note:** Selecting Location consent may drain battery power. For more information, refer to "Power Saving Mode" on page 288.

3. Tap to exit this calling mode.

### Making an Emergency Call With a SIM card installed

🏂 📶 🗎 11:17 Ab

Emergency callback mode

The Emergency calling mode makes redialing an emergency number a 1-tap process. Before you can resume normal calling operations, you should first exit this mode.

- Swipe the Lock screen to unlock the device.
- 2. Press and then tap
- 3. Enter the emergency number (ex: 911) and then tap
- Complete your call. During this type of call, you will have access to the Speaker mode, Keypad, and End Call features.
  - After completing your emergency call, papears in the Notification area until you exit the Emergency calling mode.

**Note:** This mode can drain your battery power more rapidly than a normal calling mode.

- **5.** At the Emergency Callback screen:
  - Tap Call 911 to callback 911 with a single tap.
  - Touch and slide to return to the Home screen while still remaining in the Emergency calling mode. This allows you to access other applications while staying in this mode.
  - Touch and slide to exit the Emergency calling mode.

# **Dialing Options**

When you enter numbers on the Keypad, you will see three on-screen options.

From the keypad screen, use one of the following options:

- Call ( to call the entered number.
- **Delete** ( ) to delete digits from the current number.
- Voice Mail ( ) to access your Voice Mail service.

#### To view additional dialing options:

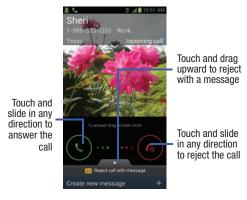
- Tap 🖃
  - Send message to send the current caller a text message while still maintaining the current call active.
  - Add to Contacts to add the current number to either a new or existing Contacts entry.
  - Speed dial setting to access the Speed Dialing menu where you can assign a speed dial location to a current Contacts entry.
  - Add 2-sec pause to insert a two-second pause to enter a 2-second delay within a number string (the phone continues dialing after 2 seconds without any additional keys being pressed.
  - Add wait to insert a hard pause within the number string (the phone waits for your input). A wait requires that any consecutive numbers be manually sent by tapping Yes.
  - Call settings to provide you access to the Call settings screen.

# **Answering a Call**

When somebody calls you, the phone rings and displays the incoming call image. The caller's phone number, picture, or name if stored in Contacts List, displays.

- At the incoming call screen:
  - Touch and slide to answer the call.
  - Touch and slide to reject the call.
  - Touch and drag the Reject call with message tab upward and tap a predefined rejection message or tap Create new message to create a new custom outgoing response.

Pressing the Volume down button mutes the ringer. If the incoming call is from a number stored in your Contacts, the entry's name is displayed. You may also see the caller's phone number, if available.



# **Managing Reject Calls**

This feature allows you to categorize both known and unknown callers as rejected contacts. These Contacts are then added to you Rejection list which can be managed for individual entries from within the Contacts list or as a whole from the Call rejection screen.

From the Home screen, tap



Press **=** and then tap **Call settings** → **Call rejection**.

- 3. In a single motion touch and slide OFF right to turn it on ON. The slider color indicates the activation status of the Auto reject mode.
  - **OFF:** disables the automatic rejection feature. You must then manually reject incoming phone calls.
- 4. Tap the Auto reject mode field to configure your automatic rejection settings. Rejected calls are routed automatically to your voicemail. Choose from:
  - All numbers: enables the features for all known and unknown numbers, including those contacts that are not assigned to the rejection list.
  - Auto reject numbers: automatically rejects all entries assigned to the Reiect list/Blacklist.

# Adding numbers to the rejection list

Entries can be added to the list via either the Contacts menu or via the Auto reject list menu. The Contacts menu option assigns all numbers for an individual as rejected. The Auto reject list allows to assign individual numbers.

#### To assign multiple numbers as rejected via Contacts:

1. From the Home screen, tap

- 2. Locate an entry and tap it to open the Contact Overview Screen (page 111).
- Press and then tap Add to reject list. All phone numbers associated with this entry are then added to the reject list.

### To assign single number as rejected via Auto reject list:

- 1. From the Home screen, tap
- 2. Press and then tap Call settings → Call rejection
  → Auto reject list.
- 3. Tap (Create) and either enter the phone number or select a Contact from your Logs or Contacts list.
- 4. Tap Save to complete the assignment.

### **International Calls**

- 1. From the Home screen, tap and then touch and hold until the device shows "+" on-screen.
- **2.** Use the on-screen keypad to enter the country code, area code, and phone number.
- 3. If you make a mistake, tap once to delete a single digit.
- 4. Touch and hold
- to delete all digits.
- **5.** Tap

# **Pause Dialing**

You can dial or save phone numbers with pauses for use with automated systems, such as voicemail or financial phone numbers.

- 2 Second Pause automatically sends the next set of numbers after a two-second pause. This is indicated in the number string as a comma (.).
- Wait sends the next set of numbers only after tapping Yes
  This is indicated in the number string as a semicolon (;).
  - 1. From the Home screen, tap and use the on-screen keypad to enter the phone number.
- Press and then tap Add 2-sec pause. This feature adds an automatic two-second pause.
- **3.** Use the keypad to enter the additional numbers that will be dialed automatically after the second pause.

**Tip:** You can create pauses longer than three seconds by entering multiple 2-sec pauses.

**4.** Tap ( .

# **Wait Dialing**

Inserting a Wait into your dialing sequence means that the phone waits until it hears a dial tone before proceeding with the next sequence of numbers.

- From the Home screen, tap and use the on-screen keypad to enter the phone number.
- Press and then tap Add wait. This feature causes
  the phone to require your acceptance before sending
  the next set of entered digits.
- **3.** Tap
- Once prompted to Send the following tones?, tap
   Yes to dial the remaining digits.

# **Redialing the Last Number**

The device stores the numbers of the calls you've dialed, received, or missed if the caller is identified.

### To recall any of these numbers:

- 1. From the Home screen, tap
- 2. Tap the Logs tab to display the list of recent calls.
- 3. Tap the name/number and tap



# **Speed Dialing**

Once you have stored phone numbers from your Contacts List, you can set up to 99 speed dial entries (2-100) and then dial them easily whenever you want, simply by touching the associated numeric key.

Note: Speed dial location #1 must be reserved for Voicemail use.

# **Setting Up Speed Dial Entries**

**Important!** Speed dial location #1 is reserved for Voicemail. No other number can be assigned to this slot.

- 1. From the Home screen, tap 🚺 .
- Press and then tap Speed dial setting. The Speed dial setting screen displays a virtual list of locations with the numbers 2 through 100.
- Tap an unassigned number slot. The Select contact screen displays.
- Tap a contact and select a number to assign it to the speed dial location. The selected contact number/ image is displayed in the speed dial number box.

### **Changing a Speed Dial Entry Order**

- 1. From the Home screen, tap .
  - . Press and then tap Speed dial setting.

**Important!** The number 1 is reserved for Voicemail and another number cannot be assigned to this slot.

- 3. Press and then tap Change order.
- Tap the current entry then tap the new target speed dial location.

**Note:** Tapping 2 existing speed dial locations causes the entries to switch positions.

**5.** Press to exit the Change order screen and return to the previous screen.

# Removing a Speed Dial Entry

- From the Home screen, tap
- 2. Press and then tap Speed dial setting.
- Touch and hold a existing on-screen speed dial location and select Remove from the context menu.

Press and then tap **Remove**. Tap an entry and select (**Remove entry**).

**4.** Press **t** to return to the previous screen.

# Making a Call Using Speed Dial

You can assign a short cut number to a phone number in the Contacts List for speed dialing.

- 1. From the Home screen, tap 🚺
- Touch and hold a previously created speed dial location (numbers 2-100, or 1 if you are dialing voice mail) until the number begins to dial.
- 3. If you are not certain of the speed dial location, tap

  → Speed dial setting and tap a speed dial number to view the assigned phone number.

# **Using S Voice**

This is a voice recognition application used to activate a wide variety of functions on your device. This is a natural language recognition application.

This goes beyond the Google Search Voice Actions feature that simply recognizes Google commands and search terms. You can ask it questions (Is it raining in Dallas?) or give it commands (Show my where to find cheap gas).

- From the Home screen, tap (Apps) →
   (S Voice).
- Read the on-screen disclaimer information and tap Confirm to continue.
- 3. Review the Terms of service and tap Agree to continue.
- Navigate through the following on-screen tutorial screens by reading the information and tapping Next, or tap Skip to continue without reading the information.
- Wake up the application by repeating the phrase Hi Galaxy.

**Note:** The wake-up command/phrase can be changed from "Hi Galaxy" to anything else. For more information, refer to "Samsung Unlock Options" on page 298. **6.** Tap (Speak) if the device does not hear you or to give it a command.

#### Example 1:

- I want to find the best pizza online.
- Tap Q and say "Find me the best Pizza". This launches an Internet search.

#### Example 2:

- I want to find the nearest gas station.
- Tap and say "Find me the nearest gas station". This launches the Map application and indicates where these are in relation to your current position.

# Wi-Fi Calling

Wi-Fi Calling is a free feature for T-Mobile customers using this device with the new ISIM card. Wi-Fi Calling is an excellent solution for coverage issues in and around the home or wherever cellular coverage is limited. Minutes used while connected to the Wi-Fi network count against available rate plan minutes.

Note: Wi-Fi Calling cannot be used at the same time as AllShare Cast Hub.

### The benefits of Wi-Fi Calling include the following:

- Wi-Fi Calling provides a coverage option to improve upon your current in-home coverage experience
- · Wi-Fi Calling works anywhere there is a Wi-Fi signal available

Important! A new micro SIM card must be installed within the device prior to using this feature. Wi-Fi must first be active and communicating prior to launching Wi-Fi Calling.

Note: This feature is active by default. If you are in an active Wi-Fi call and go out of range of your Wi-Fi, the call will be dropped.

### **Activating Wi-Fi**

- 1. Press  $\rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  and then tap **Settings**.
- Locate the Wi-Fi field and in a single motion touch and slide OFF to the right to turn it on ON.
   The slider color indicates the activation status.
- Select a Wi-Fi network from the list of available networks. Follow the on-screen instructions to complete connection.



#### Wi-Fi Connected

Displays when Wi-Fi is connected, active, and communicating with a Wireless Access Point (WAP).



#### Wi-Fi Communication Issue

Displays when Wi-Fi is active and there is an available open wireless network.

Note: To avoid international data roaming fees when using Wi-Fi calling when outside the United States, the Data Roaming feature on your device must be turned off.

Note: With certain rate plans, minutes used while connected to the Wi-Fi network count against available rate plan minutes.

Important! If you are not using a new ISIM card, you will receive an Error: ER05 Invalid SIM message. You must be using a new ISIM card to use this feature.

# **Activating Wi-Fi Calling**

- Ensure that the Wi-Fi connected icon displays on the status bar.
  - If prompted with an on-screen "Did you know your phone can make calls over Wi-Fi" popup, tap Learn and follow the remaining on-screen instructions. Tap Next → and tap Done.
- Press → ☐ and then tap Settings →
   More settings → Wi-Fi Calling. The feature is active when there is a green check mark in the field.

- 3. If (Missing 911 Address) displays in the Status Bar, follow these steps to provide 911 an address for emergency situations:
  - Log into <u>my.t-mobile.com</u>.
  - Click on Profile and edit the Edit customer information.
  - Enter your emergency location information and complete the online registration.
- Press → and then tap Settings →
   More settings → Wi-Fi Calling Settings.
- 5. Tap Connection Preferences and select a preference for use by the Wi-Fi Calling feature:
  - Wi-Fi Preferred: Wi-Fi network is preferred over cellular network when making calls. Calling requires you to stay in the Wi-Fi range.
  - Wi-Fi Only: Wi-Fi network is required for making calls. Calling requires you to stay in the Wi-Fi range.
  - Cellular Preferred: The cellular network is preferred over a Wi-Fi network when making calls.

- 5. Tap **OK** to save the setting.
- Press → and then tap Settings →
   More settings.
- Tap Wi-Fi Calling to toggle off the feature, then tap it again to reactivate the feature and re-register your device with the T-Mobile Network.
- Confirm (Wi-Fi Calling Ready) displays in the Status Bar.

### **Launching Wi-Fi Calling**

Note: Verify you are currently connected to a Wireless Access Point.

 Ensure that the Wi-Fi connected icon displays on the status bar. 2. Confirm (Wi-Fi Calling Ready) displays in the Status Bar.

When	Action	Then
	Displays on the screen status bar.	You are connected to the T-Mobile network and can make Wi-Fi calls.
	Displays on the screen status bar.	The Wi-Fi calling feature is active and in use within an active call.
	Does not display on the screen status bar.	You are charged normal calling rate minutes. For more information, refer to "Activating Wi-Fi Calling" on page 80.
(6:3)	Displays on the screen status bar.	There is an error in the use or 911 registration of the Wi-Fi Calling feature.

Use the phone Dialer, Logs, or Contacts list to make a call. 4. Go to the dialer and make a call. Make sure (Wi-Fi Calling in use) appears during the call.

# **In Call Options**

Your phone provides a number of features that are available for use during a call.



### **Adjusting the Call Volume**

During a call, use the Volume keys on the left side of the device, to adjust the earpiece volume.

 During a call, press the Up volume key to increase the volume level and the Down volume key to decrease the level.

- or -

Tap the on-screen **Extra volume** button to increase the incoming call volume even more than by just using the volume keys.

 Enabled/disabled via the Call settings menu (Call settings → Use extra vol. for calls). For more information, refer to "Configuring General Call Settings" on page 277.

From the Home screen, you can also adjust the ring volume using these keys.

### Placing a Call on Hold

You can place the current call on hold whenever you want. If your network supports this service, you can also make another call while a call is in progress.

#### To place a call on hold:

- 1. Tap Hold to place the current call on hold.
- 2. Tap **Unhold** to activate the call that is on hold.

#### To make a new call while a call is in progress:

- Enter the new phone number that you wish to dial or look it up in Call history.
- 2. Tap Add call to dial the second call.
- 3. Dial the new phone number and tap



#### To switch between the two calls:

Tap Swap.

The previous In call number turns gray and displays On hold. The new active call displays a green background behind the number.

### Turning the Speakerphone on and off

While on a call, you can use your Speakerphone by following these steps:

- 1. Tap (Speaker off) to toggle the speakerphone on.
- 2. Tap (Speaker on) to toggle the speakerphone off.

Tip: When the speaker is turned On, the color of the speaker is green. When the speaker is turned Off, the color of the speaker is gray.

# **Muting a Call**

- Tap (Mute off) to turn mute on so the other caller cannot hear you speaking.
- Tap (Mute on) to turn mute off and resume your conversation.

### **Switching to Bluetooth Headset**

- Pair the target Bluetooth headset prior to your call.
- 2. While on a call, switch to the Bluetooth headset instead of speaker by tapping (Headset off).
- At the prompt, tap Turn on to enable Bluetooth if it is not already activated.

**4.** While on a call, switch back to the device speaker by tapping (Headset on).

### **More In-call Options**

During a call you can save the current caller's information to the Contacts list, or create a Memo.

### **Viewing the Contacts List**

During a call you can look up a number in the Contacts list.

- 1. Press and then tap Contacts.
- 2. Browse the Contacts list for the information you need.
- 3. Press to return to the active call.

### **Creating a Memo During a Call**

During a call it may be necessary to record information (a Note).

- 1. Press and then tap **Memo**.
- 2. Use the keyboar<u>d to enter the note then tap Save.</u>
  - If desired, press and select a new memo background color before saving.

#### **Adjusting Noise Reduction**

During a call it may be necessary to adjust the noise reduction feature. Activating this feature can improve the quality of yo<u>ur co</u>nversation by reducing ambient noise.

- **1.** Press and then tap **Noise reduction off** to toggle the status and activate the feature.
- 2. Press and then tap **Noise reduction on** to toggle the status and deactivate the feature.

# **Multi-Party calls**

### **Making a Multi-Party Call**

A multi-party call is a network service that multiple people to participate in a multi-party or conference call.

For further details about subscribing to this service, contact T-Mobile customer service.

### **Setting up a Multi-Party Call**

- 1. From the Home screen, tap
- 2. Dial the number for the first participant and tap
- Tap Add call, enter the second phone number and tap . The first caller is placed on hold.

 Wait for the second caller to answer the incoming call and tap Merge. The two calls are now joined into a multi-party call and display in the order in which they were called.

Important! Multiple callers can be joined to a single multiparty line. Additional callers participate in a new Multiparty session and are held in conjunction with the previous multiparty call. You can swap or place each multi-party call on hold.

### Having a Private Conversation With One Participant

When you have two participants in a multi-party session, it might be necessary to place one of those participants on hold so that a private conversation can be held with a single caller. While you are in a multi-party call:

- 1. Press and then tap Manage conference call.
- 2. Tap adjacent to the participants you would like to split from

Active Conference Call



the current multi-line call. The list displays the callers in the order they were dialed.

Note: The Manage conference call option is not available for multi-party calls created while using the Wi-Fi Calling feature. You must be on the cellular network to use the manage feature.



- **3.** Tap the participant to which you want to speak privately.
  - You can now talk privately to that person while the other participants can continue to converse with each other. If there is only one other participant, that person is placed on hold.
- To return to the multi-party call, tap the Merge icon. All
  of the multi-party call participants can now hear each
  other.

#### **Dropping One Participant**

- 1. Press and then tap Manage conference call.
- Tap end to the right of the number to drop.
   The participant is disconnected and you can continue the call with the other participant.
- Tap to end your conversation with the remaining caller.

#### **Call Waiting**

You can answer an incoming call while you have a call in progress, if this service is supported by the network and you have previously set the Call waiting option to **Activate**.

You are notified of an incoming call by a call waiting tone. For more information, refer to "Configuring Additional Voice Call Settings" on page 280.

#### To answer a new call while you have a call in progress:

- 1. In a single motion, touch and slide it in any direction to answer the new incoming call.
- 2. Tap an option from the Accept call after menu:
  - Putting xxx on hold to place the previous caller on hold while you answer the new incoming call.

 Ending call with xxx to end the previous call and answer the new call.

**Note:** The new caller appears at the top of the list. The previous caller is placed on hold and appears at the bottom of the list.

Tap Swap to switch between the two calls. This places the new caller on hold and activates the previous call.

**Important!** The currently active call is displayed with a green background.

Tap Swap again to switch back.

# **Logs Tab**

The Logs tab is a list of the phone numbers (or Contacts entries) for calls you placed, accepted, or missed. The Logs tab makes redialing a number fast and easy. It is continually updated as your device automatically adds new numbers to the beginning of the list and removes the oldest entries from the bottom of the list.

The Notification area of the Home screen (upper-left) displays phone notifications, status, or alerts such as:



Displays when a call is in progress.



Displays when a call was missed.

### Accessing the Logs Tab

- 1. From the Home screen, tap  $\longrightarrow$   $\searrow$  (Logs tab).
- 2. Tap an entry to view available options.

Note: The Logs tab only records calls that occur while the phone is turned on. If a call is received while it is turned off, it will not be included in your calling history.

Each entry contains the phone number (if it is available) and Contacts entry name (if the number is in your Contacts).



 $Indicates\ all\ outgoing\ calls\ made\ from\ your\ device.$ 



Indicates any received calls that were answered.



Indicates a missed call.



Indicates any received calls that were rejected.



Indicates auto rejected calls.

# **Accessing Call log from The Notifications Area**

- Locate from the Notifications area of the Status bar.
- Tap the Status bar to reveal the Notifications tab, and then drag the tab to the bottom of the screen to open the Notifications panel (1).
- 3. Tap the Missed call entry to open the Logs screen (2).



This list provides easy access to redial an entry, or you can also choose to access two types of history entry lists depending on how they are touched.

#### Call logs - Caller Overview

- Tap a contact entry name or number to reveal the Call options screen:
  - **Call** allows you to redial the entry by name or number.
  - Send message allows you to create a new text message to the selected entry.
  - **Time** provides the time and date of the call and its duration.
  - Create contact to save the number if it is not already in your Contacts.
  - Update existing to update an existing Contacts entry with the current number.
  - Edit number before call press to edit the selected number before you place your next outbound call.
  - **Delete** press to delete the Contacts entry.
  - **Send number** press to send the current Contacts entry information to an external recipient.
  - Add to reject list press at to add the current phone number to an automatic rejection list. Similar to a block list, the selected caller will be blocked from making an incoming calls to your phone.

- Touch and hold an entry to display the entry-specific context menu:
  - Call [Number] to redial the current phone number.
  - Send message allows you to create a new text message to the selected entry.
  - Edit number before call to make alterations to the current phone number prior to redial.
  - Send number to send the current Contacts entry information to an external recipient.
  - Add to Contacts to save the number if it is not already in your Contacts.
  - View contact to view the information for the currently stored Contacts entry.
  - Add to reject list to add the current phone number to an automatic rejection list. Similar to a block list, the selected caller will be blocked from making an incoming calls to your phone.
  - **Delete** to delete the entry from the Loas list.

# Altering Numbers from the Logs List

If you need to make a call from the Logs screen and you need to alter the number prior to dialing, you can add the appropriate prefix by prepending the number.

- U → U5 Logs
- Touch and hold an entry to access the entry-specific context menu.
- Tap Edit number before call.
- 4. Edit the number using the on-screen keypad or delete digits by pressing to erase the numbers.
- 5. Tap once the number has been changed.

# **Erasing the Call logs List**

You can delete either an individual call log entry or all current entries from the Logs list.

#### To clear a single entry from the list:

- 1. From the Home screen, tap
- → C5 Logs
- Touch and hold an entry and select Delete → OK.

#### To clear all entries from the list:

- 2. Press and then tap Delete.
- 3. Tap Select all.

**4.** Tap **Delete** to continue with the erasure.

- or -

Tap Cancel to stop the current process.

### **Viewing Missed Calls from Lock Screen**

When you are unable to answer a call for any reason and your screen is locked, the number of missed calls are displayed on the Lock screen immediately after a call is missed.

- **1.** Press (Power) to reactivate the screen.
- Touch and drag the button (with the number of missed calls on it) anywhere on the screen.
   The Logs tab is then displayed.



# **Section 5: Entering Text**

This section describes how to select the desired text input method when entering characters into your phone. This section also describes the predictive text entry system that reduces the amount of key strokes associated with entering text.

Your device comes equipped with an orientation detector that can tell if the phone is being held in an upright (Portrait) or sideways (Landscape) orientation. This is useful when entering text.

Your phone also provides several on-screen keypad text entry options to make the task of text entry that much easier.

# **Text Input Methods**

There are three text input methods available:

- Google voice typing: provides a voice to text interface.
- Samsung keyboard (default): an on-screen QWERTY keyboard that can be used in both portrait and landscape orientation.
  - T9 Trace: (as part of the Samsung keyboard and not shown as an input method), is also enabled as you swipe across the on-screen keyboard. Instead of tapping each key, use your finger to trace over each letter of a word.

The on-screen QWERTY keypad works the same in both portrait and landscape mode.

# **Selecting the Text Input Method**

The Text Input Method can be assigned from within one of two locations:

#### **Settings Menu:**

■ Press → □ and then tap Settings → Language and input → Default and select an input method.

#### Text Input field:

- From a screen where you can enter text, in a single motion, touch and drag the Status bar down to the bottom of the screen to open the Notifications screen.
- **2.** Tap **(Select input method)** and select an available input method.

# **Entering Text Using T9 Trace**

T9 Trace is the built into the Samsung keyboard. This method allows you to enter a word by sliding your finger or stylus from letter to letter, lifting your finger between words. T9 Trace uses error correcting algorithms and a language model to predict the next word and includes a touch predictive text system.

Note: If you do not see the Voice typing input method button, touch and hold and drag across the icons to select (Settings) then select it from the available options.

# **Enabling T9 Trace**

When T9 Trace is enabled, the on-screen keyboard can be used to enter text by both tapping or swiping across the on-screen keys.

- 1. Press → □ and then tap Settings →

  Language and input → (adjacent to the Samsung keyboard field).
- Tap the checkmark box adjacent to the T9 Trace field to activate the feature. A green check mark indicates the feature is active.

# **Using the Samsung Keyboard**

This QWERTY keyboard can be used to enter text in either a Portrait or landscape orientation. The only difference between the two orientations are the sizes of the keys.

From a screen where you enter text, rotate your phone counterclockwise to a landscape orientation. The on-screen QWERTY keyboard displays.

# The Samsung Keyboard

This device has a built-in, QWERTY keypad (portrait mode) or keyboard (landscape mode). Using the QWERTY keypad/keyboard, you can type letter, numbers, punctuation, and other characters.

To use the Samsung keyboard you must first configure the settings to default to the Samsung keyboard.

Press → □ and then tap Settings →
 Language and input → Default → Samsung keyboard.
 - or -

From a screen where you can enter text, in a single motion, touch and drag the Status bar down to the bottom of the screen, then select (Select input method) 

Samsung keyboard.

The virtual keyboard is then assigned to the Samsung keyboard configuration for all subsequent text input.



# **Entering Text using Different Input Options**

Although the default text input method with the Samsung keyboard is to use the on-screen keys you have other options.

Note: If you do not see the Voice typing input method button, touch and hold and drag across the icons to select (Settings) then select it from the available options.

- From within an active message, tap the text input field to reveal the on-screen keyboard.
- Tap (Input Methods) to use the default Voice typing input method to convert your spoken words to on-screen text.
  - or -

Touch and hold to select from other input methods such as:

- Handwriting to launch an on-screen handwriting area that can be used to convert on-screen patterns (text) to text.
- Clipboard to launch the device's clipboard area from where you can select a current clipboard item to place in your current message.

• Settings to access the Samsung keyboard settings menu.

### Changing the Text Input Mode in Keyboard

- 1. From a screen where you can enter text, tap the text input field to reveal the on-screen keyboard.
- 2. With Samsung keyboard as your text entry method, select one of the following text mode options:
  - **Abc ABC** : to use alphabetic characters from the on-screen keyboard. In this mode, the text mode button displays  $\begin{bmatrix} 123 \\ \text{Sym} \end{bmatrix}$
  - Symbol/Numeric 123 sym : to enter numbers by pressing the numbers selecting them on the on-screen keyboard. In this mode, the text mode button displays ABC .

    There are up to 3 available pages of numeric symbols available by tapping 1/3 .

**Note:** After typing an initial uppercase character, tap to toggle capitalization.



#### All lowercase

Displays when the next character is entered in lowercase.



### **Initial Uppercase**

Displays when the first character of each word is entered as uppercase but all subsequent characters are lowercase.



### All Uppercase

Displays when all characters will be entered as uppercase characters.

By default, the first letter of a new entry is capitalized and the following letters are lowercased. After a character is entered, the cursor automatically advances to the next space.

### **Using ABC Mode in Samsung Keyboard**

- From a screen where you can enter text, tap the text input field to reveal the on-screen keyboard.
- Tap ABC to configure the keyboard for ABC mode.
   Once in this mode, the text input type shows Sym .

- 3. Enter your text using the on-screen keyboard.
  - If you make a mistake, tap to erase a single character.
     Touch and hold to erase an entire word.
- 4. Tap (Send) to deliver the message.

### **Using Symbol**|Numeric Mode

Use the Symbol/Numeric Mode to add numbers, symbols, or emoticons. While in this mode, the text mode key displays ABC .

- From a screen where you can enter text, tap the text input field to reveal the on-screen keyboard. Rotate the phone counterclockwise to a landscape orientation, if desired.
- Tap \$\frac{123}{\mathrm{Sym}}\$ to configure the keyboard for Symbol mode. Once in this mode, the text input type shows
   ABC .
- **3.** Tap a number, symbol, or emoticon character.
- 4. Tap ABC to return to ABC mode.

#### To enter symbols:

- **1.** Tap sym to configure the keyboard for Symbol mode.
- 2. Tap the appropriate symbol key.

- or -

Tap 1/3 button to cycle through additional pages.

 The first number on this key indicates which page (1, 2, or 3) of additional characters is active.

### **Using Predictive Text**

The predictive text system provides next-letter prediction and regional error correction.

Note: Only available when ABC mode is selected. Predictive text advanced settings are available only if the Predictive function is enabled.

Press → □ and then tap Settings →
 Language and input → (adjacent to the Samsung keyboard field).

- or -

From within an active text entry screen, touch and hold (Input Methods), drag across the icons, and select (Settings) to reveal the Samsung keyboard settings screen.

- 2. Set any of the following options:
  - Portrait keypad types allows you to choose a keypad configuration (Qwerty Keypad [default] or 3x4 keyboard).
  - Input language sets the input language. Tap a language from the available list. The keyboard is updated to the selected language.
  - Predictive text enables predictive text entry mode. This must be enabled to gain access to the advanced settings. Touch and hold to access the advanced settings.
  - My words list allows you to add new words to the built-in predictive text dictionary.
    - Tap (Add word) and use the keyboard to enter the new word.
    - Tap **Done** to store the new word.
  - **T9 Trace** like using Swipe, allows you to type words by swyping between on-screen keys.

- Handwriting enables the device to recognize on-screen handwriting and convert it to text.
- Voice input activates the Voice input feature. This is an experimental feature that uses Google's networked speech recognition application.
- Auto capitalization automatically capitalizes the first letter of the first word in each sentence (standard English style).
- Auto-punctuate automatically inserts a full stop in a sentence by tapping the space bar twice when using the on-screen QWERTY keyboard.
- Character preview provides an automatic preview of the current character selection within the text string. This is helpful when multiple characters are available within one key.
- **Key-tap vibration** enables vibration feedback when you tap an on-screen kev.
- **Kev-tap sound** enables auditory feedback when you tap an on-screen kev.
- **Tutorial** launches a brief on-screen tutorial covering the main concepts related to the Samsung keyboard.
- Reset settings resets the keyboard settings back to their original configuration.

### **Using Predictive Text**

The predictive text system provides next-letter prediction and regional error correction, which compensates for users pressing the wrong keys on QWERTY keyboards.

- and then tap Settings → Press Language and input → (adjacent to the Samsung kevboard field).
  - or –

From within an active text entry screen, touch and hold

- (Input Methods) and select Settings, then tap
- to reveal the Samsung keyboard settings screen. 0
- In a single motion touch and slide the **Predictive text** slider to the right to turn it on

- 3. Tap the Predictive text field and configure any of the following advanced options:
  - Word completion tells your device to attempt to predict how to complete the word you have started. (A green check mark indicates the feature is enabled.)
  - Word completion point sets how many letters should be entered before a word prediction is made. Choose from 2 letters, 3 letters, 4 letters, or 5 letters.
  - Spell correction enables the automatic correction of typographical errors by selecting from a list of possible words that reflect both the characters of the keys you touched, and those of nearby characters. (A green check mark indicates the feature is enabled.)
  - Next word prediction predicts the next word you are like to enter. (A green check mark indicates the feature is enabled.)
  - Auto-append automatically adds predictions to the word you are typing. (A green check mark indicates the feature is enabled.)
  - Auto-substitution allows the device to automatically replace misspelled or miskeyed words. This option reduce "typos." (A green check mark indicates the feature is enabled.)

- Regional correction automatically tries to correct errors caused when you tap keys adjacent to the correct keys. (A green check mark indicates the feature is enabled.
- Recapture sets the device to redisplay the word suggestion list after selecting the wrong word from the list.
- Auto substitution list allows you to create a word rule by adding words for automatic substitution during text entry (for example youve becomes you've).
  - Scroll up or down to review the current list of word substitutions.

  - Enter the original word that will be replaced in the **Shortcut** field (for example, youve).
  - Enter the substitute word that will be used in the Substitution field (for example, you?fve).
  - Tap **Done** to save the substitution rule.
- **4.** Press **t** to return to the previous screen.

# **Using the Google Voice Typing**

This feature uses Google voice recognition to convert your spoken words into on-screen text.

You can use your voice to enter text using the Google Voice typing feature.

- From the keypad, touch the top of the screen and drag it down to display your notification panel.
- 2. Tap Select input method.
- 3. Tap Google voice typing.
- At the Listening prompt, speak clearly and distinctly into the microphone. The text is displayed in the message as you are speaking.
- 5. Tap Done when you are finished.

**Note:** The feature works best when you break your message down into smaller segments.

# **Configure Google Voice Typing**

- Press → □ and then tap Settings → Language and input.
  - or –

From a screen where you can enter text, in a single motion, touch and drag the Status bar down to the bottom of the screen, then select (Select input method) 

Configure input methods.

- 2. Tap (adjacent to the Google voice typing field).
- Select a language by tapping Select input languages area.
- Remove the check mark from the Automatic field. This allows you to select additional languages.
- 5. Select the desired languages.
- Activate Block offensive words to block recognition of known offensive words or language. (A green check mark indicates the feature is active).

### **Using Google Voice Typing**

- From a screen where you can enter text, in a single motion, touch and drag the Status bar down to the bottom of the screen, then select method) → Google voice typing. The virtual keyboard is then removed and all subsequent input to done via the microphone as text to speech.
- 2. Speak into the device's microphone and watch your text being entered on-screen.
- 3. If the text is incorrect, tap **DELETE**.
- Once you have completed entering your message, tap Done.

### **Section 6: Contacts**

This section explains how to use and manage your Contacts List. You can save phone numbers to your phone's memory.

#### **Accounts**

From the Accounts menu you decide if you want applications to synchronize, send, and receive data at any given time, or if you want the applications to synchronize automatically. After determining how you want the accounts to synchronize, indicate which account to synchronize with your Contacts list.

- 1. Sign in to your Google account.
- Press → and then tap Settings → Accounts and sync.
  - or –

From the Home screen, tap  $(Apps) \rightarrow (Settings) \rightarrow Accounts and sync.$ 

3. If not already active, in a single motion touch and slide

OFF to the right to turn it on ON.

The slider color indicates the activation status.

- 4. Synchronize all accounts by tapping Sync all.
  - or –

Tap next to the account you want to synchronize.

- 5. Tap Add account to create a new account.
- Tap an account type to add.
- Follow the on-screen instructions. The selected account type synchronizes with your Contacts list.

#### **Contacts List**

### **Creating a Contact**

The default storage location for saving phone numbers to your Contacts List is your phone's built-in memory.

If existing Google and Corporate email accounts have been synchronized to your phone, these will be made available to your device during the creation of new entries. These new Contacts entries can be assigned or saved to synced accounts such as Phone, SIM, Google, or Corporate.

Your device automatically sorts the Contacts entries alphabetically. You can create either a MobileLife Contacts, Google, SIM, Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync, or Phone contact.

Note: Before you can save a contact to the Phone, Contact settings must be set to Save new contacts to Phone.

Important! The Google and Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync account types are only visible after creating an email account of those types on your phone.

- MobileLife Contacts contacts are stored remotely on the MobileLife servers and can later be retrieved even if your phone has been damaged or reset.
- Google contacts are shared with your existing Google account and can also be imported to your phone after you have created a Google Mail account.
- . SIM contacts are stored within the micro SIM Card.

**Note:** SIM contacts only store the Name and Phone number for an entry.

- Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync (also known as Work or Outlook) contacts are those contacts that are intended to be shared with either an Exchange Server or from within Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Outlook<sup>®</sup>.
- Phone contacts are stored locally on the device.

**Note:** If the phone is ever reset to its factory default parameters, contacts stored on the phone can be lost.

 Add new account lets you create a new account type. Choose from Samsung account, ChatON, Google, LDAP, Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync, or MobileLife Contacts. Note: When storing an entry into your micro SIM card, note that only the Name, and Number are saved. To save additional information for a particular contact, such as notes, email, dates, etc., it is important to save that Contact into your phone's onboard memory.

- 1. From the Home screen, tap
- p 🔼 (Contacts).
- 2. Tap + to create a contact.

Note: You can also add a new contact by entering a number from the keypad and pressing 
☐ and then tap Add to Contacts → Create contact. Continue with step 3.

- Tap a destination type (MobileLife Contacts, Google, SIM, Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync, or Phone) (depending on where you want to save the new contact information).
- Tap the Name field and enter a name for this contact using the displayed keypad.
  - Tap to access additional name entries such as: Name prefix, First name, Middle name, Last name, and Name suffix.

Tap the image icon and select a photo for this contact. Selections are: Picture or Take picture.

Note: The label entries below can change and are dependant on the selected destination type (ex: the Other and Custom might not appear with an Exchange ActiveSync account destination type).

- Tap the label button (to the left of the Phone field) and scroll through the list to select a category such as Home, Mobile, Work, Work Fax, Home Fax, Pager, Car, Company Main, MMS, Radio, Assistant, Other, Callback, or Custom.
- 7. Tap a phone number field and enter a phone number.
  - Tap 
     x on the QWERTY keyboard to remove a previously entered phone number.
  - Tap **t**o enter an additional phone number
  - Tap to remove a previously entered phone number.

- Enter additional information such as: Email, Address, Work, Events, Groups, Ringtone, Vibration pattern or tap Add another field to input additional category information.
  - Add another field contains the following options: Phonetic name, Organization, IM, Notes, Nickname, Website, Internet call, or Relationship.
  - Use your finger to slide the page up or down to see additional fields and categories.
- 9. Tap Save to complete and store the new entry.
  - or -

Tap Cancel to delete the current entry.

#### To save a Number from your Keypad:

- 1. From the Home screen, tap (Phone).
- 2. Enter a phone number using the on-screen dialpad.
- Tap Add to Contacts → Create contact or select the Contact entry from the on-screen list.

– or –

Press and then tap Add to Contacts → Create contact or select the Contact entry from the on-screen list.

- If you're updating an existing contact, tap the entry from the list and proceed to step 5.
- 4. Tap the destination field and choose from: MobileLife Contacts, Google, SIM, Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync, or Phone (depending on where you want to save the new contact information).
- Tap the Name and enter a name for this contact using the displayed keypad.
  - Tap to access additional name entries such as: Name prefix, First name, Middle name, Last name, and Name suffix.
- Tap the image icon and select a photo for this contact. Selections are: Picture or Take picture.

Note: The label entries below can change and are dependant on the selected destination type (ex: the Other and Custom might not appear with an Exchange ActiveSync account destination type).

- Tap the label button (to the left of the Phone field) and scroll through the list to select a category such as Home, Mobile, Work, Work Fax, Home Fax, Pager, Car, Company Main, MMS, Radio, Assistant, Other, Callback, or Custom.
- Enter additional fields as desired.
- Tap Save to complete and store the new entry.
  - or -

Tap **Delete** to delete the current entry.

**Note:** For further details about how to enter characters, see "Text Input Methods" on page 92

# **Finding a Contact**

You can store phone numbers and their corresponding names onto either your SIM card, your phone's built-in memory, or an external location (such as Google, Exchange, or T-Mobile Backup). They are all physically separate but are used as a single entity, called Contacts.

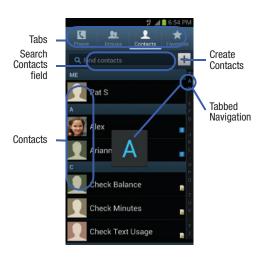
Depending on the storage size of the particular SIM card, the maximum number of phone numbers the card can store may differ.

- 1. From the Home screen, tap (Contacts).
- 2. Swipe up or down until you see the contact displayed.
  - or –

Tap the **Find contacts** field and begin entering the entry's name. Matching entries are then displayed. This process filters through all of your current account Contact entries to only show you the matching entries.

— or —

In a single motion, touch and hold the letter tab area (on the right) until on-screen letters appear, then scroll through the list. You are then taken to that section of the Contacts list. Touch the contact entry.



#### **Editing Contact Information**

1. From the Home screen, tap .

. Tap a contact name from the list and tap



– or –

Press and tap Edit.

- or -

Touch and hold a Contacts entry from the main Contacts list and then tap **Edit**.



- Edit the contact information then:
  - Tap Save to complete and store the new entry or
  - Tap Cancel to delete the current entry.

## Adding a Number to an Existing Contact

- 1. From the Home screen, tap
- Touch and hold an entry and select Edit to reveal the Contact entry's details screen
- Tap a phone number field and enter a phone number.

  - Tap to enter an additional phone number
  - Tap to remove a previously entered phone number.



Contact Details Screen

- Enter additional information such as: Email, Address, Events, Groups, Ringtone, Vibration pattern or tap Add another field to input additional category information.
  - Add another field contains the following options: Phonetic name, Organization, IM, Notes, Nickname, Website, Internet call, or Relationship.
  - Use your finger to slide the page up or down to see additional fields and categories.
- Tap Save to complete and store the new entry.
   or –

Tap Cancel to delete the current entry.

## Adding a Pause or Wait to an Existing Contact

- 1. From the Home screen, tap and use the on-screen keypad to enter a new phone number.
- 2. Press and then tap Add 2-sec pause. This feature adds an automatic two-second pause.
  - or –

Press and then tap **Add wait**. This feature causes the phone to require your acceptance before sending the next set of entered digits.

Tap Add to Contacts → Update existing.

4. Scroll through the available list of existing entries and select the desired target.

**Note:** This new phone number is then added as a new number to the selected entry.

- 5. Tap the label button (to the left of the new phone number) and scroll through the list to select a category type.
- Tap **Save** to store and update the entry.

## **Deleting Contacts**

Important! Once Contacts list entries are deleted, they cannot be recovered.

- 1. From the Home screen, tap |
- Touch and hold a contact name from the list and select Delete → OK.

# **Contact List Options**

- From the Home screen, tap
- - Press . The following options display:
    - Delete: allows you to delete 1 or more of your contacts.
    - Import/Export: imports or exports contacts to or from the USB storage location. SIM card or SD card, you can also send namecards via methods such as Bluetooth, Email, Gmail, Messaging, or Wi-Fi Direct.
    - Merge with Samsung account: allows you to merge all of your current Contact entries with your active Samsung account. If several of your contacts are from other external sources, this allows you to "back them up" or copy them to your Samsung account. Tap **OK** to continue or **Cancel** to exit.
    - Merge with Google: allows you to merge all of your current Contact entries with your active Google/Gmail account. If several of your contacts are from other sources such as Corporate email, Internet email, Facebook, etc.., this allows you to "back them up" or copy them to your Gmail account. Tap **OK** to continue or **Cancel** to exit.

- Accounts: allows you to add and manage mobile accounts on Samsung account, ChatON, Google, LDAP, Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync, or MobileLife Contacts. This option also allows you to manually synchronize all of your current contacts with their respective accounts.
- Speed dial setting: allows you to set up speed-dialing.
- **Send email**: allows you to send an email using your Google account.
- Send message: allows you to send a text or picture message.
- Contacts to display: allows you to choose to only display contacts that are part of a customized list, MobileLife Contacts, Gmail, display contacts stored to your SIM card, Microsoft Exchange email, display contacts stored on your device, and/or display All contacts.
- Settings: allows you to configure where you save new contacts to, or view your service numbers, or send contact information.
   Options include: Only contacts with phones, List by, Display contacts by, Service numbers, and Send contact.

## **Contact Menu Options**

- 1. From the Home screen, tap
- 2. Touch and hold an entry to reveal the context menu. The following options display:
  - Edit: allows you to edit the currently selected Contacts entry.
  - Delete: allows you to delete the currently selected Contacts entry.
  - Join contact: allows you to link the current contact to another current contact. Similar to a "see also" feature. If you can't remember a contact's information, linking entries can help you find the person you are looking for.
  - **Share contact information**: allows you to send the current entry info via text message.
  - Add to favorites: allows you to copy the current Contacts entry to the list within the Favorites tab.
  - Remove from favorites: allows you to remove the current Contacts entry from the Favorites tab.
  - Add to group: allows you to add the current Contacts entry to an existing group.

- Add to reject list/ Remove from reject list: allows you to add or remove the current Contacts entry to a list of automatically rejected incoming phone numbers.
- Share namecard via: allows you to send the current Contact entry's information to an external recipient via either Bluetooth, ChatON, Dropbox, Email (Exchange or Internet), Gmail, Messaging, or Wi-Fi Direct.
- **Print namecard**: allows you to print selected information on a compatible Samsung printer.

## **Contact Entry Options**

- 1. From the Home screen, tap .
- Tap an entry to reveal the Contact entry's Overview Screen. This screen contains Name, contact numbers, email, and linked contact information.
- 3. Press to reveal the context menu specific to this entry.
- 4. Tap an available option.



Contact Overview Screen

## **Joining Contact Information**

Most people now maintain multiple email accounts, social networking logins, and other similar account information. For example, a Facebook account login name might differ from a corporate email account login because they are maintained separately and for different groups of people.

This device can synchronize with multiple accounts. When you synchronize your phone with those accounts, each account creates a separate contact entry in the Contacts list. If one of your contacts (Amy Smith) has a regular email account that you maintain in Gmail, but also has a Facebook account under her maiden and married name, as well as a Video! chat account, when you merge those accounts into your Contacts list you can join all of her entries and view the information in one record

Joining contact information makes sending messages easy. You can select any account email address or information all from one screen, versus searching multiple, individual screens to locate the desired account information.

Next time you synchronize your phone with your accounts, any updates contacts make to email account names, email addresses, etc. automatically update in your contacts list.

- 1. From the Home screen, tap
- p <u>2</u>
- Tap a contact name (the name you want to link to another entry) to reveal the Contact entry's Overview Screen.

**Note:** Typically this is the same contact with a different name or account information.

- 3. Press and then tap Join contact.
- 4. Tap the second contact entry (the entry in which to link). The second contact is now linked with the first and the account information is merged into one screen.

**Note:** The information is still maintained in both entries, but displays in one record for easier viewing when you link the contacts.

Important! It is the first contact image that is displayed for both, and the first contact's name that is used.

For example: If Amy (original entry) is joined with Julie (second entry). Julie seems to disappear and only Amy remains. Tap the Amy entry (showing the Amy image) to view both.

5. Tap the main linked contact to view the contact information you linked. The contacts and information displays with an icon next to the contact name to indicate what type of account information is contained in the entry.

#### **Unjoining a Contact**

- 1. From the Home screen, tap
- 2.
- Tap a contact name (the account name from which you want to unjoin an entry). This reveals the details for entry.

**Note:** Typically this is the same contact with a different name or account information.

- Tap the Connections area.
  - or –

Press 🔳 and then tap Separate contact.

4. Tap next to the entry you want to unjoin and select **0K**. The contacts are "unjoined" or separated and no longer display in the merged record screen. Both contacts now go back to being separately displayed.

## Marking a Contact as Default

When you use applications such as the Voice Dialer or other messaging type applications, the application needs to know which information is primary (default) in a contact entry list. For example, when you say "Call John Smith", if you have three phone records for John Smith, the Voice dialer is looking for the "default" number or entry.

The **Mark** as **default** option marks one entry in a contact record to use as the default. This comes in handy when you have multiple entries for the same person.

- 1. From the Home screen, tap 🔼
- 2. Tap a Contact entry.
- Press and then tap Mark as default. The Mark as default screen displays radio buttons next to the contact name, phone number, or other contact information.
- Tap the radio button next to the entry information you want to be the primary information (such as name, phone number, or email) and select **Done**.

Note: If there are multiple phone numbers assigned to an entry, assigning one as the default will automatically dial that number when the contact is selected for dialing.

## **Sending a Namecard**

A Namecard contains contact information, and can be sent to recipients as a Virtual Business Card (V-card) attachment using Bluetooth, Google Mail, or as a message.

- 1. From the Home screen, tap 🔼
- 2. Tap a Contact entry.
- Press and then tap Share namecard via and select a delivery method: Bluetooth, ChatON, Dropbox, Email (Exchange or Internet), Gmail, Messaging, or Wi-Fi Direct.
   The Namecard attaches to the selected message type and is delivered when you send the message.

**Note:** Email appears as an option only after an Internet or Exchange email account has been created.

### **Sending All Current Namecards**

Rather than selecting once Contact entry at a time, you can send all of your current entries at once.

- 1. From the Home screen, tap 🔼
- Press and then tap Import/Export → Send namecard via.
- Tap Select all to place a check mark alongside all currently displayed Contact entries.
- 4. Tap Done and select a delivery method:
  - Bluetooth to transmit the contacts to another bluetoothcompatible device.
  - ChatON to send the contacts to selected buddies.
  - Dropbox to upload the entries to your remote Dropbox web storage location.
  - Email to attach the contact cards to a new outgoing email (Exchange or Internet).
  - Gmail to attach the contact cards to a new outgoing Internetbased email
  - Messaging to attach the contact cards to a new outgoing text message.

**Note:** The Web storage Upload feature requires that you are logged into your Samsung account prior to upload.

 Wi-Fi Direct to transmit the entries to another Wi-Fi Direct enabled device.

## Sending a namecard using Bluetooth

You must create a Contact prior to sending a namecard to a recipient. For more information, refer to "Creating a Contact" on page 103.

- 1. From the Home screen, tap [2].
- Touch and hold the entry to reveal the on-screen context menu.
- 3. Tap Share namecard via → Bluetooth.

Important! You must activate Bluetooth to use this feature.

**4.** Tap the Bluetooth device in which to send this name card. Bluetooth forwards the namecard to the recipient.

# **Copying Contact Information**Copying Contact Information to the SIM Card

The default storage location for saving phone numbers to your Contacts list is your phone's built-in memory. This procedure allows you to copy numbers saved to the phone's memory, onto the SIM card.

- 1. From the Home screen, tap
- 2. From the Contacts List, press and then tap Import/Export → Export to SIM card.
- Tap Select all to choose all current phone contact entries.
  - or -

Select a specific entry by touching an entry. A check mark indicates a selection.

**4.** Tap **Done**. The name and phone number for the selected contact is then copied to the SIM.

# Copying Contact Information to the microSD Card

This procedure allows you to copy entry information saved on the phone's memory, onto the SIM card.

**Note:** These must be contacts stored on the phone. External entries (Google, Exchange, etc...) can not be transferred in this manner.

- 1. From the Home screen, tap 🔼
- 2. From the Contacts List, press and then tap Import/Export → Export to SD card.
- 3. Tap **0K** to choose all current phone contact entries.

## **Synchronizing Contacts**

Syncing data from your managed accounts allows you to add and manage a new or existing contact from your online or remote accounts to your phone. Prior to syncing, you must first have an active Google or Microsoft Exchange account with current Contact entries, and be signed into your account via the phone.

With syncing, any Contacts entries (with phone numbers, email addresses, pictures, etc.) are updated and synced with your phone. For more information about syncing existing managed accounts, see "Accounts and Synchronization" on page 291.

- Press → and then tap Settings → Accounts and sync.
- Locate the email account containing the contacts you wish to synchronize.
- 3. Tap within the adjacent account field to reveal the account's synchronization settings screen.
- To synchronize Contacts, tap Sync Contacts. A green checkmark indicates the feature is enabled.

**Note:** The process of updating your Contacts tab can take several minutes. If after 10-20 minutes, your list has not been updated, repeat step 2-3.

Your Contacts tab then reflects any updated Contact information.

Note: Syncing of contacts requires you are logged into your Gmail and Corporate accounts via the device.

## **Display Options**

The Display options menu allows you to allows you to choose which contacts to display. You can also choose to display only contacts that have phone numbers.

Note: Once a display filter has been selected, only those Contact entries are shown until the All contacts option is re-selected.

- 1. From the Home screen, tap
- Press and then tap Contacts to display. Select any
  of the following to filter according to the selection:
  - All contacts allows you to display all available Contacts.
  - ChatON allows you to display those Contacts currently shared with ChatON.
  - MobileLife Contacts lists those Contacts currently found within the MobileLife account.
  - Samsung account lists those Contacts currently found and sync'd within the Samsung account.
  - Google lists those Contacts currently found within the Google account
  - Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync lists those Contacts currently found within the Exchange account.
  - SIM lists those Contacts currently found only on your SIM card.
  - **Phone** lists those Contacts currently found only on your Phone.
  - Customized list allows you to enable which account categories are displayed. For example, on Google contacts, you can filter which Contact categories are shown (Friends, Family, etc..)

# Adding more Contacts via Accounts and Sync

When you synchronize applications such as Facebook, Twitter, MySpace, a corporate email account, or Google, using the Accounts and sync option synchronizes the data from the selected account type with your Contacts list.

- Press → and then tap Settings → Accounts and sync → Add account.
- Determine which type of account information you want to synchronize with your Contact list. Selections are: Samsung account, ChatON, Dropbox, Email, Facebook (for synching), Google, LDAP, Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync, or MobileLife Contacts.
- 3. Tap an account type to add.
- Follow the prompts. The selected account type synchronizes with your Contacts list.
- After synchronizing accounts you may want to link contact information. For more information, refer to "Joining Contact Information" on page 112.

#### To add Facebook content to your Contacts list:

You can now add your Facebook contact information, such as pictures, email, and phone numbers directly to your Contacts list. All of their current contact information is then migrated over to your phone. If a Contacts entry already exists with a slightly different name, separate entries are created and can later be linked (joined) together into a single entry.

Important! This process not only synchronizes your contact information but also your status, events, and more.

- Press → and then tap Settings → Accounts and sync → Add account → Facebook (for syncing).
- 2. Log into your Facebook account:
  - Enter your account's access Email and Password information and tap Log in.
- If prompted, configure any requested optional permissions.

- Tap those contact settings you wish to synchronize (all are enabled by default). A green check mark indicates the feature is enabled.
  - Choose from: Sync interval settings, Sync Gallery, or Sync calendar.
- Tap Done to complete the login and sync process.
- Return to the Accounts and sync screen and resync this new Social Network account.

#### To resync Social Network Contacts:

- Press → and then tap Settings → Accounts and sync.
- 2. Tap within the adjacent SNS account field to reveal the account's synchronization settings screen.
- Tap Sync now.

**Note:** From the main Accounts and sync page you can also tap **Sync all** to resync all accounts.

## **Additional Contact Options**

#### Sending an Email to a Contact

Note: Contacts must contain and email account and address before you can use the Send email feature.

- 1. From the Home screen, tap [
- Press and then tap Send email. Contacts that contain an email address display.
- Tap the contact(s) to which you want to send an email. A check mark displays next to the selection.

Note: The select contact must have an email as part of their details screen.

- **4.** Tap **Done**.
- 5. Select an email account type.
- 6. Compose the email and tap Send.

## Export/Import

For more information, refer to "Copying Contact Information" on page 116.

## **Contact List Settings**

From this menu you can determine the default storage location for Contacts, display your phone's primary number, and view service numbers listed in your Contact list.

- 1. From the Home screen, tap 🔼
- Press and then tap Settings. Configure any of the following options:
  - Only contacts with phones allows you to display only those contacts containing phone numbers.
  - List by defines how the current list of Contacts are sorted: First name or Last name.
  - Display contacts by defines how the current list of Contacts are listed: First name (ex: Steve Smith) or Last name first (Smith, Steve).
  - Service numbers lists the currently available service numbers.
  - Send contact allows you either Send all namecards or Send individual namecards to an external device.

## **Groups**

This feature allows you to add a new or existing contact to a call group. This group can be one of the already present groups (Family, Friends, or Work) or a user-created group.

#### **Creating a New Caller Group**

- tab).
- 1. From the Home screen, tap
- Press and then tap **Create**.
- Tap the **Group name** field and use the on-screen keypad to enter a new group name. For more information, refer to "Text Input Methods" on page 92.
- 4. Tap **Group ringtone** and select a ringtone for the group. Selections are: Default, Ringtones, or Go to My files.
- Tap **Vibration pattern** and select a unique vibration pattern to be associated with this group.
- Tap **Save** to store the newly created group.

Note: Some externally maintained group types (such as Google) can only be managed or updated remotely online vs via the device. These external types will not allow editing or deleting members locally via the phone.

## Adding an Existing Entry to a Current Caller Group

- 1. From the Home screen, tap
- Tap a group entry  $\rightarrow$  (Add group member).
- From the available list of contacts, tap the contact(s) you want to add. A check mark displays next to contact entry.
- Tap **Done**. The selected contacts are added to the group.

# Removing an Entry From a Caller Group

- **1.** From the Home screen, tap  $\bigcirc$





- Tap a group entry.
- Press and then tap Remove member.
- Tap all of the contacts you want to remove from this group. A checkmark displays next to contact entry.
- Tap **Done**. The contacts are removed from the group.

## **Editing a Caller Group**

To edit a Group entry, there must be at least one member as part of the selected group.

- - Touch and hold a group entry then select **Edit group**.
- Make modifications to the **Group name**, **Group ringtone**, or **Vibration pattern** fields. For more information, refer to "Creating a New Caller Group" on page 121.
- Tap Save.

## **Deleting a Caller Group**

- 1. From the Home screen, tap
- Press and then tap **Delete**.
- Select either **Select all** or tap the desired group.
- Tap **Delete**.

## Sending a Message to a Group

- 1. From the Home screen, tap
- 2. Tap an existing group, and press and then tap Send message.
  - or -

Touch and hold a group entry and select **Send message**.

- 3. Select the recipients of the new message (indicated by a green checkmark). If an entry contains multiple phone numbers, each must be selected individually.
- Tap Done.
- **5.** Type your message, and tap | (Send).

#### The Favorites Tab

The Favorites tab is a list of the phone numbers that have been designated as favorite contacts. For more information, refer to "Logs Tab" on page 88.

- 1. From the Home screen, tap [7].
- (Favorites tab).

#### Adding a contact to your favorites list:

- 1. From within the Favorites tab, press and select Add to favorites.
- 2. Place a check mark alongside those current Contacts entries you wish to assign as favorites.
- 3. Tap **Done** to complete the process.

# **Section 7: Messages**

This section describes how to send or receive different types of messages. It also explains the features and functionality associated with messaging.

## **Types of Messages**

Your phone provides the following message types:

- Text Messages
- Multimedia (Picture, Video, and Audio) Messages
- Email and Gmail Messages
- Google Talk
- Google+
- Messenger
- ChatON

The Short Message Service (SMS) lets you send and receive text messages to and from other mobile phones or email addresses. To use this feature, you may need to subscribe to your service provider's message service.

The Multimedia Messaging Service (MMS) lets you send and receive multimedia messages (such as picture, video, and audio messages) to and from other mobile phones or email addresses. To use this feature, you may need to subscribe to your service provider's multimedia message service.

Important! During the creation of a text message, adding an image, sound file, or video clip automatically changes it from a text message (SMS) to a multimedia message (MMS).

## Message Icons on the Status Bar

Messaging icons are displayed on the Status Bar at the top of the display when new messages are received. For more information, refer to "Status Bar" on page 31.

Note: The Messaging application can also be accessed by pressing and then tapping (Apps) > (Messaging).

## **Creating and Sending Messages**

**1.** From the Home screen, tap (**Compose**).



 $(Messaging) \rightarrow$ 



Tap the Enter recipient field to manually enter a recipient.

- or -

ap 👤

to select from one of the following:

- **Contacts**: to select a recipient from your Contacts list (valid entries must have a wireless phone number or email address).
- **Groups**: to select a recipient from the Group list.
- Favorites: to select a recipient from the Favorites list.
- Logs: to select a recipient from a list of recently sent messages.
- If adding a recipient from either Logs, Contacts, or Group, tap the contact to place a checkmark then tap Done. The contact displays in the recipient field.

Note: Delete any unnecessary members by tapping their name/number in the recipient area and selecting **Delete**.

- 4. Add more recipients by tapping either the **Enter** recipient field or and selecting recipients.
- Tap the Enter message field and use the on-screen keypad to enter a message. For more information, refer to "Text Input Methods" on page 92.
  - Review your message and tap (Send).
- If you have more than one recipient, the same text message is sent to all recipients in the Enter Recipients field.

**Note:** If you exit a message before you send it, it will be automatically saved as a draft.

# **Quick Messaging a Number from the Contacts List**

- From the Home screen, tap (Contacts)
- 2. Locate an entry from the Contacts list.
- In a single motion, touch and drag your finger over the number by going to the left. This action addresses a new text message to the selected recipient.



## **Message Options**

## Options before composing a message

- 1. From the Home screen, tap (Messaging).
- Before composing a message, press if from the main Messaging screen to display additional messaging options:
  - Search: allows you to search through all of your messages for a certain word or string of words. Use the on-screen keypad to enter a word or phrase in which to search, then tap .

    For more information, refer to "Message Search" on page 130.
  - Text templates: displays your available text message reply templates. For more information, refer to "Text Templates" on page 132.
  - Settings: allows you to access Messaging settings. For more information, refer to "Messaging Settings" on page 130.
  - Delete threads: allows you to delete any message thread.
     Select the messages to delete and a green checkmark will appear next to the message. Tap Delete. For more information, refer to "Deleting a single message thread" on page 129

## Options while composing a message

- 1. From the Home screen, tap (Messaging).
- 2. From within an open message, press to display additional messaging options:
  - Call: places an outgoing call to the sender.
  - Insert smiley: allows you to add insert smiley icons images (emoticons).
  - Preview (only in MMS): allows you to add preview the MMS message prior to delivery.
  - Add text: allows you to add text items from sources such as: S Memo, Calendar, Location, Contacts, and Text templates.
  - View contact: reveals the current Contact's overview screen.
  - Add slide: converts an SMS message into an MMS (Multimedia) message and allows you to attach an existing slideshow.
  - Remove slide: allows you to remove a previously attached slideshow.
  - Add subject: allows you to enter a subject.
  - Duration (only in MMS): allows you to change the duration of the image slideshow.

- Layout (bottom) (only in MMS): allows you to change the layout.
- Delete messages: allows you to erase either select specific message bubbles or all current messages bubbles.

## Adding attachments to a message

To add an attachment to your message, tap (Attach) and select one of the following options:

- Images: allows you to tap an existing image from your Pictures list to add it to your message.
- Take picture: allows you to temporarily exit the message, take a
  photo with phone's camera, and then add it to your message by
  tapping Save.
- Video: allows you to choose an existing video from the Videos list, then add it to your message.
- Record video: allows you to temporarily exit the message, record a video clip using the phone's camera, and then add it to your message by tapping Save.
- Audio: allows you to choose an existing audio file from the Audio list, then add it to your message by tapping the circle to the right of the audio so that it turns green, then tapping OK.

- Record audio: allows you to temporarily exit the message and record an audio clip using the phone's microphone. It is then automatically attached to the message.
- S Memo: allows you to add an S Memo that you have created.
- Calendar: allows you to add an event from your calendar.
- Location: allows you to attach a thumbnail of a map showing vour location.
- Contacts: allows you to tap on an existing Address Book entry. then add it to your message by tapping **Done**.

## **Adding Additional Text**

You can copy text such as names, phone numbers, and events from your Contacts. Calendar, or a Memo.

- 1. While composing a message, press 

  → Add text.
- 2. At the Add text screen, select one of the following:
  - **S Memo**: allows you to insert text from an existing S Memo.
  - Calendar: allows you to add the name, date, and time of a calendar event to your message.
  - Location: allows you to add an address and the link to the location on Google Maps.
  - Contacts: allows you to add the name and phone number of any of your contacts to your message.

• Text templates: allows you to add pre-defined phrases and sentences. For more information, refer to "Text Templates" on page 132.

The information is added to your message.

## Viewing Newly Received Messages

When you receive a message, your phone notifies you by displaying [ within the Notification area at the top left of vour Home screen.

#### To read a message:

- 1. Open the Notification Bar and select the message. For more information, refer to "Notification Bar" on page 36.
  - or —

From the Home screen, tap then tap the new message to view its contents. The selected message displays on the screen.

- to play a multimedia message.
  - To pause playback of the multimedia message, tap



In a single motion, touch and drag up or down the page to scroll through the message (if additional pages were added).

#### Message Threads

Sent and received text and picture messages are grouped into message threads. Threaded messages allow you to see all the messages exchanged (similar to a chat program) and displays a contact on the screen.

Message threads are listed in the order in which they were received, with the latest message displayed at the top.

#### To reply to a text message:

1. From the Home screen, tap .



Text Message Thread

While the message is open, tap the Enter message field and then type your reply message. **3.** Compose your reply.

Your texts are colored Blue and your caller's replies are Yellow.

4. Tap (Send) to deliver your reply.

– or –

Press and then select one of the available message options (page 125).

#### To access message thread options:

- From the main Messaging screen, touch and hold the message to display the following options:
  - View contact: displays the Contact's Overview page.
  - Add to contact: begins the process of adding the new number to your Contacts list.
  - **Delete thread**: deletes the currently selected message thread.

## To access additional Bubble options:

- Touch and hold the message bubble within an active message conversation to display the following options:
  - **Delete message**: deletes the currently selected message bubble from the thread.
  - Copy message text: copies the currently selected message bubble from the thread.

- Lock/Unlock message: locks or unlocks the currently selected message bubble from being accidentally deleted.
- Forward: allows you to forward the currently selected message bubble to an external recipient.
- **Copy to SIM**: copies the currently selected message bubble as a single text message within the SIM card.
- **View message details**: displays details for the currently selected message bubble.

# **Deleting Messages**

## Deleting a single message thread

- **1.** From the Home screen, tap
- Touch and hold a message from the Messages list, then select Delete thread.
- 3. At the prompt, tap **OK** to delete or **Cancel** to exit.

## **Deleting multiple message threads**

- 1. From the Home screen, tap
- 2. Press and then tap Delete threads.
- Tap each message thread you want to delete. A checkmark displays beside each selected message.
- 4. Tap Delete.

At the prompt, tap **OK** to delete or **Cancel** to end the process.

## Deleting a single message bubble

- 1. From the Home screen, tap 🏷
- 2. Open a message to reveal the message string.
- Touch and hold a message bubble, then select Delete message.
- **4.** At the prompt, tap **OK** to delete or **Cancel** to exit.

## Deleting multiple message bubbles

- 1. From the Home screen, tap
- **2.** Open a message to reveal the message string.
- 3. Press and then tap Delete messages.
- Place a check mark on the individual bubbles targeted for deletion or choose Select all.
- 5. Tap **Delete** to erase or **Cancel** to exit.

## Message Search

You can search through your messages by using the Message Search feature.

From the Home screen, tap .

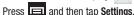


- Press and then tap **Search**.
- Use the on-screen keypad to enter a word or phrase in which to search, then tap
- All messages that contain the entered search string display.

# **Messaging Settings**

To configure the settings for text messages, multimedia messages, Voice mails, and Push messages.

1. From the Home screen, tap



The following Messaging settings are available:

### **Display**

- Bubble style: allows you to choose from several bubble styles for your messages. Bubbles are the rounded boxes that surround each message.
- Background style: allows you to choose from several background styles for your messages.

• Use the volume kev: allows you to change the text size by using the up or down volume keys.

#### **Storage settings**

- Delete old messages: deletes old messages when the limit is reached, rather than overwriting them.
- Text message limit: allows you to set a limit on how many text messages are allowed in one conversation.
- Multimedia message limit: allows you to set a limit on how many multimedia messages are allowed in one conversation.

#### Text message (SMS) settings

- **Delivery reports**: when this option is activated, the network informs you whether or not your message was delivered.
- Manage SIM card messages: allows you to manage the messages stored on the SIM card.
- Message center: allows you to enter the number of your message center where your messages reside while the system is attempting to deliver them.
- **Input mode**: allows you to set the input mode for your text messages. Choose from: GSM Alphabet. Unicode, or Automatic

#### Multimedia message (MMS) settings

- Delivery reports: when this option is activated, the network informs you whether or not your message was delivered.
- Read reports: when this option is activated, your phone receives a request for a read reply along with your message to the recipient.
- **Auto-retrieve**: allows the message system to automatically retrieve messages.
- Roaming auto-retrieve: allows the message system to automatically retrieve while roaming.
- Creation mode: allows you to select the creation mode: Free, Restricted, or Warning.
  - Restricted: you can only create and submit messages with content belonging to the Core MM Content Domain.
  - Warning: the phone will warn you via pop up messages that you are creating a multimedia message which does not fit the Core MM Content Domain.
  - Free: you may add any content to the message.

### **Push message settings**

 Push message: allows you to receive push messages from the network.  Service loading: allows you to set the type of service loading notification, Choose from: Always. Promot. or Never.

#### **Notification settings**

- Notifications: allows you to see message notifications on your status bar.
- Select ringtone: allows you to set the ringtone for your message notifications.
- Vibrate: allows you to configure the vibration mode associated with message alerts. Choose from: Always, Only in silent mode, or Never

#### **Emergency alerts settings**

 Emergency Alerts: allows you to configure emergency alert settings. You can enable/disable those alert categories you wish to receive. Choose from: Imminent extreme alerts, Imminent severe alert, and AMBER alerts.

Note: The Presidential alert can not be disabled.

- Emergency notification preview: allows you to play a sample emergency alert tone. Tap Stop to cancel the playback.
- Alert reminder: allows you to configure the reminder interval.
   Choose from Once, Every 2 minutes, Every 15 minutes, or Off.

#### **Emergency Alert Configuration**

This device is designed to receive wireless emergency alerts from the Commercial Mobile Alerting System (CMAS); which may also be known as the Personal Localized Alerting Network (PLAN). If your wireless provider has chosen to participate in CMAS/PLAN, alerts are available while in the provider's coverage area. If you travel outside your provider's coverage area, wireless emergency alerts may not be available. For more information, please contact your wireless provider.

Emergency Alerts allows customers to receive geographically-targeted messages. Alert messages are provided by the US Department of Homeland Security and will alert customers of imminent threats to their safety within their area. There is no charge for receiving an Emergency Alert message.

There are three types of Emergency Alerts:

- · Alerts issued by the President
- · Alerts involving imminent threats to safety of life
- · AMBER Alerts (missing child alert)

Customers may choose not to receive Extreme Alerts, Severe Alerts, and AMBER Alerts.

**Important!** Alerts issued by the President can not be disabled.

#### To disable Extreme, Severe, and AMBER Alerts:

- 1. From the Home screen, tap
- Press and then tap Settings.
- Scroll to the bottom and select Emergency alerts. All alerts are enabled by default (checkmark showing).
- Tap on an alert option to disable the alert and remove the checkmark.

## **Text Templates**

This screen displays your available text message reply templates. This is a readily accessible list of both default and user-defined text snippets that can be used to quickly reply to incoming messages.

- **1.** From the Home screen, tap
  - ess 🗖 and ther
- From the Messaging list, press and then tap Text templates.
- Tap a message to immediately insert it into your current message conversation.

#### To create your own text template:

- 1. From the Home screen, tap
- 2. From the Messaging list, press and then tap **Text**
- 3. Tap (Create text template).
- 4. Enter a new text string and tap Save.

## **Using Email**

templates.

Email (or Internet Email) enables you to review and create email using several email services. You can also receive text message alerts when you receive an important email. Your phone's Email application lets you access and manage multiple email accounts simultaneously in one convenient location.

There are currently three main types of email accounts on your phone: Gmail, Internet-based email (Gmail, Yahoo, etc..), and Microsoft Exchange (Corporate email or Outlook<sup>®</sup>).

To send and receive email messages through an ISP (Internet Service Provider) account, or if you wish to use your device to access your corporate email through a VPN (Virtual Private Network), you will first need to set up an IMAP or POP account.

- IMAP (Internet Message Access Protocol) This protocol is frequently used in large networks and commercial settings.
   IMAP4 is the current standard.
- POP3 (Post Office Protocol) This protocol is supported by most ISPs (Internet service providers) and common among consumer applications. POP3 is the current standard.
- Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync This protocol is frequently used with a large corporate email server system and provides access to email, contact, and calendar synchronization.

#### **Creating an Internet Email Account**

- From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (Email).
- 2. If you already have other email account setup:
  - Open an existing email account, press ☐ and then tap
     Settings → ☐ (Add new account).



Enter your **Email address** and **Password** information. **Email address**: your Internet email address.

 Password: typically your network access password (case-sensitive).

- Tap Show password to display the password as you enter it in the associated field.
  - Tap Manual setup to configure your connection settings manually (POP3 or IMAP). Follow the on-screen prompts and enter the information specific to your email provider.
- 4. Tap Next.
- At the Account options screen, select the frequency which the device should check for new email on the server and tap Next.
  - Tap the Notify me when email arrives field to receive new email notifications.
  - Tap the Automatically download attachments when connected to Wi-Fi field to assist with faster access to large email attachments when using Wi-Fi.
- At the Set up email screen, name the account and enter a screen name to identify yourself on this account.
  - The unique account name is used to differentiate this account from other email accounts accessed by your device.
- 7. Tap Done to store the new account.

Messages for this account display on the Inbox tab. You can also view Personal information for this account, Receipts (if you setup the account to return receipts), Travel information, and more (if available).

## **Opening an Email**

- 1. From the Home screen, tap → (Email).
- Tap the account name field (upper-left) to open the complete email account list page.
  - Selecting Combined view allows you to view all the emails for your current accounts, managed by the application, to be listed on a single screen.
- 3. Select an email account and tap an email message.

### Refreshing Email messages

- 1. From the Home screen, tap → (Email).
- 2. Select an email account.
  - If you are already in an email account, tap the account name field (upper-left) to open the complete email account list page.
  - Select an available email account.
- 3. Tap (Refresh)

## **Composing Email**

- 1. From the Home screen, tap  $\longrightarrow$   $\bigcirc$  (Email).
- **2.** Tap the account name field (upper-right) to open the complete email account list page.
- 3. Tap Inbox  $\rightarrow$  (Compose).
- 4. Enter the recipient's email address in the To field.
  - If you are sending the email message to several recipients, separate the email addresses with a comma. You can add as many message recipients as you want.
- Press and then tap Add Cc/Bcc to add additional carbon copy recipients.
  - Use the **Cc** field to carbon copy additional recipients.
  - Use the **Bcc** field to blind copy additional recipients.
- 6. Tap the Subject field and enter the email subject.
- Tap the email text field and compose your email message.
  - - Tap the file you wish to attach.
    - Tap to delete the attached file.

Note: If you attach an image to your email, you have the option to resize it prior to delivery. Choose from: Original, Large (70%), Medium (30%), or Small (10%). Once chosen, tap **0K**.

8. Once complete, tap (Send).

### **Configuring Email Settings**

- 1. From the Home screen, tap  $\longrightarrow$   $\bigcirc$  (Email).
- 2. Select an account.
- 3. Press and then tap Settings → <Account>.
- **4.** Alter any of the following settings:
  - Account name: displays your uniquely created account display name.
  - Your name: displays the name used in the From field of your outgoing email messages.
  - **Signature**: Lets you attach a customized signature to the bottom of all outgoing emails.
    - In a single motion touch and slide the **Signature** slider to the right to turn it on ON.
    - Tap the **Signature** field, change the current text, and tap **OK** to save the new signature.

- Default account: Assign this account as the default email account used for outgoing messages.
- Always Cc/Bcc myself allows you to include your own email address in either the CC, Bcc, or None fields. Lets you always receive a copy of outgoing emails.
- Forward with files: Lets you include attachments when forwarding an email.
- Recent messages: adjusts the number of on-screen messages shown in the current category list at any one time.
- **Show images**: allows you to view embedded images located within the body of the currently displayed email.
- Email check frequency: adjusts the time interval used by your device to check your email account for new email messages.
- Auto download attachments: allows the device to automatically download email attachments when an active Wi-Fi connection is detected. This process speeds up the process of downloading an emails attachments for offline review by not using a 3G or 4G network connection.

- Size to retrieve emails configures the incoming email size allowed to pass through to your phone automatically without user interaction. Emails with attachments larger than configured will have to be retrieved manually.
- Email notifications: Activates the email notification icon to appear within the Notifications area of the status bar when a new email (Gmail, etc..) is received.
- Select ringtone: Plays a selected ringtone when a new email message is received.
- Vibrate: Activates a vibration when a new email message is received.
- Incoming settings: Lets you specify incoming email settings, such as User name, Password, IMAP server, Security type, Port, and IMAP path prefix.
- Outgoing settings: Lets you specify outgoing email settings, such as SMTP server, Security type, Port, Require sign-in, User name, or Password.

**Note:** Some the above options may not be displayed when using some Internet account types.

# Microsoft Exchange Email (Outlook)

Your phone also provides access to your company's Outlook Exchange server. If your company uses either Microsoft Exchange Server 2003 or 2007, you can use this email application to wirelessly synchronize your email, Contacts, and Calendar information directly with your company's Exchange server.

## Setting Up a Microsoft Exchange Email account

- 1. From the Home screen, tap  $\longrightarrow$   $\bigcirc$  (Email).
- 2. If you already have other email account setup:



- or -

Enter your **Email address** and **Password** information. **Email address**: your Outlook work email address.

- Password: typically your network access password (case-sensitive).
- Tap Send email from this account by default, to make this your default email account for outbound emails.
- Tap Show password to display the password as you enter it in the associated field.

Note: If selected, the Manual setup button changes to read Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync. If activated, skip to step 6.

- Tap Next. Consult your Network or IT Administrator for further details and support.
- Tap Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync (from the add new email account screen).

Note: If prompted with an on-screen notification that the connection that the "Setup could not finish", tap Edit details to continue with a manual update of necessary information.

 When prompted to provide additional detailed information within the Exchange server settings screen, enter an updated **Domain**, and confirm your user name and **Password** information.

Important! Remember to manually place the cursor in the correct spot and enter a Domain name before the "[Domain]\[user name]" entry. Most servers only provide a username.

- Update or re-enter your Exchange server information within the appropriate field. This field can often be populated with incorrect or out of date information provided by your server.
  - Exchange Server: your exchange server remote email address. Typically starts with mail.XXX.com. Obtain this information from your company network administrator.

**Important!** Do not accept the default entry as this is a guess based on returned information.

- If your network requires SSL encryption, tap the Use secure connection (SSL) field to place a check mark in the box and activate this additional level. Most often, this option should be enabled.
- If your network requires that you accept SSL certificates, tap
  the Accept all SSL certificates field to place a check mark in
  the box and activate this additional level. Most often, this option
  is not required. Confirm this information with your IT
  Administrator.

Important! If your Exchange server requires this feature, leaving this field unchecked can prevent connection.

- **9.** Consult your IT Administrator if it is necessary to enable the **Use client certification** option.
- 10. With the new server information entered, tap Next.

- Read the on-screen Activation disclaimer and, when prompted, tap 0K. The device then verifies your incoming server settings.
- If prompted, read the Remote security administration information and tap OK to accept the service and continue.
- Adjust the various on-screen configuration fields and tap Next. It may take a few seconds for the next screen to load
  - Enabling the Automatically download attachments when connected to Wi-Fi option decreases the wait time to access large email attachments.
- 14. If prompted, read the Activate device administrator? screen and tap Activate to complete the email setup process.

Note: This process can take a few minutes. If the previous setup screen re-appears, ignore it and do not alter any fields during this process.

**15.** Identify your new work email account with a unique name (Ex: Work), then tap **Done**.

## **Opening an Exchange Email**

- From the Home screen, tap → (Email).
- Tap the account name field (upper-left) to open the complete email account list page.
- Select an exchange email account and tap an email message.

## Refreshing Exchange Email

- 1. From the Home screen, tap  $\longrightarrow$   $\bigcirc$  (Email).
- 2. Select an email account.
  - If you are already in an email account, tap the account name field (upper-left) to open the complete email account list page.
  - Select an available email account.
- 3. Tap (Refresh).

# **Composing Exchange Email**

 For more information, refer to "Composing Email" on page 135.

# **Deleting an Exchange Email Message**

- Touch and hold an email (from your inbox list) and select Delete from the on-screen context menu.
  - or -

With the email message displayed, tap (Delete).

# Configuring Microsoft Exchange Email Settings

- Press → and then tap Settings → Accounts and sync.
- Tap adjacent to the Microsoft Exchange account field to reveal the account's synchronization settings screen.
- Toggle any of the available fields to force the device to manually resync the parameter.
  - or —

From the current Email inbox listing, press ☐ and then tap **Settings** → <**Exchange email account>** and specify the email settings you wish to synchronize:

 Account name displays the name used by the device to track the account.

- **Signature**: Lets you attach a customized signature to the bottom of all outgoing emails.
  - In a single motion touch and slide to the right to turn it on
  - Tap the **Signature** field, change the current text, and tap **OK** to save the new signature.
- Default account: Assign this account as the default email account used for outgoing messages.
- Always Cc/Bcc myself allows you to include your own email address in either the CC, Bcc, or None fields. Lets you always receive a copy of outgoing emails.
- **Forward with files**: Lets you include attachments when forwarding an email.
- Show images: allows you to view embedded images located within the body of the currently displayed email.
- Auto download attachments: allows the device to automatically download email attachments when an active Wi-Fi connection is detected. This process speeds up the process of downloading an emails attachments for offline review by not using a 3G or 4G network connection.

- Period to sync email to assign the sync range for your incoming and outgoing email messages between your phone and your external exchange server. How many days worth of email messages should the phone and server synchronize.
   Choose from: Automatic, All, 1 day, 3 days, 1 week, 2 weeks, or 1 month.
- Empty server trash: allows you to delete your email account's trash bin remotely.
- Sync schedule allows you to configure your email sync schedule.
- Out of office settings allows you to both activate/deactivate your email's out of office settings, and configure both the start/ end dates and your outgoing message.
- Size to retrieve emails configures the incoming email size allowed to pass through to your phone automatically without user interaction. Emails with attachments larger than configured will have to be retrieved manually.
- Period to sync Calendar assigns a period for your phone to sync calendar events. Choose from: 2 weeks, 1 month, 3 months, 6 months, or All calendar.

- Security options: allows you to enable several security options such as: Encryption, Encryption algorithm, Sign, Sign algorithms, Email certificates, and Security policy list. These security policies could restrict some functions from corporate servers.
  - Security policy list: lists the current email's security policy.
     These policies could restrict some functions from corporate servers.
- In case of sync conflict allows you to assign the master source on emails. If there is a conflict with the current email sync you can assign the server as the main source for all emails (Update to device) or assign the phone to be the main source and update the server accordingly (Update to server).
- Auto resend times enables the phone to resend an outgoing email a specified number of times if delivery fails.
   The default is 3 auto resends.
- Email notifications enables the phone to display a status bar icon when new email messages have been received.
- Select ringtone assigns an audible ringtone when a new or upcoming event is pending.

- Vibrate assigns a vibration when a new or upcoming event is pending.
- Exchange server settings provides access to the Domain\user name, Password, and Exchange server settings.
- Sync email synchronizes emails between your device and the remote exchange server.
- Sync contacts synchronizes the contacts between your device and the remote exchange server.
- **Sync calendar** synchronizes your exchange calendar entries between your device and the remote exchange server.
- Sync task synchronizes your exchange tasks entries between your device and the remote exchange server.
- 4. Press to return to the previous page.

# **Using Google Mail**

Google Mail (Gmail) is Google's web-based email. When you first setup the phone, Gmail is configured. Depending on the synchronization settings, Gmail is automatically synchronized with your Gmail account.

# Signing into Google Mail

1. From the Home screen, tap → (Gmail).

Note: You must sign in to your Gmail account in order to access features such as Google Mail and Play Store.

Tap **New** if you do not have a Google account.

- or -

Tap **Existing** if you have a Google account. The Inbox loads conversations and email.

# **Opening Gmail**

- From the Home screen, tap → (Gmail).
- Tap an existing email message.

## **Refreshing Gmail Mail**

From within the Gmail message list, tap 🥥 (Refresh) at the bottom of the screen to refresh the screen, send and receive new emails, and synchronize your email with the Gmail account.

## **Other Gmail Options**

- 1. From the main Gmail screen, tap 🥒 (Labels) at the bottom of the screen to set up and manage Labels for your Gmail messages.
- 2. From the main Gmail screen, tap (Search) at the bottom of the screen to search through your Gmail messages.

### **Composing a Gmail Message**

- 1. From the Home screen, tap  $\longrightarrow$  (Gmail).
- 2. From the Gmail Inbox, tap (Compose) at the bottom of the screen to create a new message.
- 3. Enter the recipients Email address in the To field.

Tip: Separate multiple recipient email addresses with a comma.

- 4. Press and select Add Cc/Bcc to add a carbon or blind copy.
- 5. Enter the subject of this message in the **Subject** field.
- Tap the Compose email field and begin composing your message.
- 7. Once complete tap (Send).

## Viewing a Gmail Message

- From the Gmail Inbox, tap a message to view the following options located at the bottom of the screen:
  - Archive : archives the selected Email.
  - **Delete**  $\stackrel{ ext{del}}{=}$  : deletes the currently selected Email.
  - Labels : assigns a label to the current Email.
  - Mark as Unread : tags the current message as unread and returns you to the Google Mail Inbox.
  - **Newer**: swiping to the right displays newer Emails.
  - Older: swiping to the left displays older Emails.
- 2. Press to select one of the following additional options:
  - Mark important: assigns the current email an important status.

- Mute: mutes the conversation.
- Report spam: reports the Email message as spam.
- Settings: allows you to configure the General, or Notification settings.
- Help: launches the browser and displays Google Mobile Help information.
- Send feedback: sends feedback to Google.

# **Creating an Additional Gmail Account**

- 1. From the Home screen, tap → (Gmail).
- Press and then tap Settings → ADD ACCOUNT and follow the same steps as referenced in the previous section. For more information, refer to "Signing into Google Mail" on page 143.

# **Google Talk**

Google Talk<sup>TM</sup> is a free Windows and web-based application for instant messaging offered by Google. Conversation logs are automatically saved to a Chats area in your Gmail account. This allows you to search a chat log and store them in your Gmail accounts.

Note: Before using this application, you must first have an active Gmail account available and be currently logged in.

1. From the Home screen, tap  $\rightarrow$  talk (Talk).

**Note:** If you are not already logged into Google, refer to the instructions for signing in on page 143.

Begin using Google Talk.

**Note:** The Network confirms your login and processes. This could take up to 5 minutes to complete.

#### ChatON

Provides a global mobile communication service where you can chat with more than 2 buddies via a group chat. Share things such as pictures, videos, animation messages (Scribbles), audio, Contacts, Calendar entries, and Location information.

Important! The Samsung account manages the access information (username/password) to several applications, such as AllShare Play, ChatON, and Media Hub.

For more information, visit: https://web.samsungchaton.com.

## Registering with the Service

1. Confirm you have already logged in to your Samsung account.

**Note:** There should be no (Samsung account icon) in the Notifications area of the screen.

- 2. From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (2.) (ChatON).
- 3. Read the on-screen notification about data charges and tap OK.
- 4. Select either the Terms and conditions or Privacy policy and read the on-screen information. Tap Accept to continue.
- 5. Select a country code, enter your current phone number to register with the service, and tap **Done**.
- Choose to receive the verification code via either SMS (text message) or **Voice** (answering machine call) to your device.

Note: If you opt to receive the verification code via SMS, this information is sent directly to your device. Once received, the **Verification** field is automatically filled in.

7. Enter your real name and tap







# Adding Your First Chat On Buddy

- 1. From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (ChatON).
- 2. Tap Add buddy and choose a search method.
  - Address : to search by Country code and phone number.
  - Search by Samsung Account ID Q: to search by using a known samsung account ID.
- 3. Select a country code if it differs from yours.
- Enter the information and tap Q (Search). Once the recipient is matched, their entry appears in the Results area.
- (Add buddy) and confirm your new buddy appears in the Buddies tab.

**Note:** For more information, press (Settings) and tap General → Help.

# **Using ChatON for Chatting**

- From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (ChatON).
- Tap the Buddies tab and select a buddy to initiate your chat.
- Enter your message using the on-screen text entry method.
- 4. Tap Send (Send).

# To reply to a ChatON message:

- While the chat session is active, tap the Enter message field and then type your reply message.
- 2. Compose your reply. Your texts are colored Blue and your buddy's messages are white.

3. Tap Send (Send) to deliver your reply.

## Buddy's Bubble



Text Message Thread

## Deleting a single message bubble

- From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (ChatON).
- 2. Launch a chat session to reveal the message string.
- 3. Touch and hold a message bubble, then select **Delete**.

# Google +

Google+ makes messaging and sharing with your friends a lot easier. You can set up Circles of friends, visit the Stream to get updates from your Circles, use Messenger for fast messaging with everyone in your Circles, or use Instant Upload to automatically upload videos and photos to your own private album on Google+.

- Sign on to your Google account. For more information, refer to "Creating a New Google Account" on page 18.
- From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (Google+).
- Select the account you want to use to sign in to Google+.
  - or –

Tap **Add account** to create another account.

- 4. Follow the on-screen instructions to use Google+.
- **5.** Visit <a href="https://www.google.com/mobile/+/">www.google.com/mobile/+/</a> for more information.

# Messenger

Messenger allows you to bring groups of friends together into a simple group conversation. When you get a new conversation in Messenger, Google+ sends an update to your device.

- Sign on to your Google account. For more information, refer to "Creating a New Google Account" on page 18.
- 2. From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (Messenger).

- or -

From the Google+ application, select Messenger.

- 3. Select the account you want to use to sign in to Google+.
  - or -

Tap Add account to create another account.

 When prompted, configure the Sync contacts parameter (Sync contacts or Don't sync) and tap Continue.

- When prompted, configure the Instant Upload parameters as desired and tap DONE.
- 6. Follow any on-screen setup instructions.
- At the Messenger screen, tap to start a new message.
- In the upper text field, enter a name, email address, or circle.
- In the bottom message field, enter a message then tap (Send).

From the **Messenger** screen, tap **Learn more** for more detailed information.

## **Section 8: Multimedia**

This section explains how to use the multimedia features of your device, including the Camera/Camcorder, Music Player, AllShare Play, and how to manage your photos, images and sounds.

You can take photographs and shoot video by using the built-in camera functionality. Your camera produces photos in JPFG format.

**Important!** Do not take photos of people without their permission.

> Do not take photos in places where cameras are not allowed.

Do not take photos in places where you may interfere with another person's privacy.

Note: An SD card is no longer needed to take pictures or shoot video since there is already 16/32GB of built-in storage.

# **Assigning the Default Storage** Location

**Important!** Too many users can overlook this storage location until something goes wrong. It is recommended that you verify this location or change it before initiating the use of the camera or camcorder features.

1. From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (Camera).



- 2. From the viewfinder screen, tap (Settings) and scroll down to the Storage entry.
- Tap this entry and select the desired default storage location for newly taken pictures or videos. Choose from: Phone or Memory card.

Note: It is recommended that you insert an external microSD card and then set the option to Memory card.

to return to the Home screen.

# **Using the Camera**

### **Taking Photos**

Taking pictures with your device's built-in camera is as simple as choosing a subject, pointing the camera, then pressing the camera key.

Note: When taking a photo in direct sunlight or in bright conditions, shadows may appear on the photo.

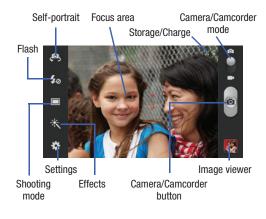
- 1. From the Home screen, tap (Camera).
- Using the device's main display screen as a viewfinder, adjust the image by aiming the camera at the subject.

Note: Use either the Up and Down volume keys or spread/ pinch the screen to zoom in or out. For more information, refer to "Navigating Through the Screens" on page 51.

- If desired, before taking the photo, use the left area of the screen to access various camera options and settings.
- You can also tap the screen to move the focus to a desired area of interest.

5. Press (Camera) until the shutter sounds. (The picture is automatically stored within your designated storage location (page 149). If no microSD is installed, all pictures are stored on the Phone.) For more information, refer to "Camera Options" on page 151.

**Note:** Touch and hold **o** to take a burst shot. These are saved using a Fine image quality.



# **Camera Options**

Options are represented by icons across both sides of the screen.

The following shortcuts are available for the camera:



**Focus area**: displays the area of the image used as the main focus area.



**Self portrait**: allows you to set the front camera so you can take pictures of yourself.



Flash: allows you to set the flash options to Off, On, or Auto flash.



**Shooting mode**: allows you to set the shooting mode to one of the following:

- Single shot: takes a single photo and view it before returning to the shooting mode.
- Burst shot: allows several photographs to be captured in quick succession by touching and holding the Camera button.
- HDR: takes pictures in HDR (High Dynamic Range) mode to increase image detail.

- Face detection: adjusts the camera focus based on face detection technology.
- Smile shot: the camera focuses on the face of your subject. Once the camera detects the person's smile, it takes the picture.
- Beauty: adjusts the contrast to smooth facial features.
- Panorama: takes a landscape photo by taking an initial photo and then adding additional images to itself. The guide box lets you view the area where the second part of the panoramic picture should fall within.
- Cartoon: gives your photo a cartoon look.
- Share shot: uses Wi-Fi Direct to share your pictures quickly with your friends. For more information, refer to "Enabling Share Shot" on page 157.
- Buddy photo share: uses face recognition from pictures in your contacts to send your friends or family pictures of themselves.



Effects: allows you to change the color tone or apply special effects to the photo. Options include: None, Negative, Black and white, Sepia, Washed out, Cold vintage, Warm vintage, Posterize, Solarize, Blue point, Green point, or Red-yellow point.



**Share shot - Share with**: lists the current participants sharing images with you via an active Share shot session.



**Share shot - Shooting mode**: lists the current shooting modes available from with the Share Shot mode.



#### Settings:

**Edit shortcuts**: allows you to set shortcut icons for the settings that you use the most.

**Self-portrait**: allows you to set the front camera so you can take pictures of yourself or video chat.

**Flash**: allows you to set the flash options to Off, On, or Auto flash.

**Shooting mode**: allows you to set the shooting mode. For more information, see Shooting mode description.

Scene mode: allows you to set the Scene to help take the best pictures possible. Options include None, Portrait, Landscape, Night, Sports, Party/Indoor, Beach/Snow, Sunset, Dawn, Fall Color, Firework, Text, Candlelight, and Backlight. Helpful tips are shown for each scene mode at the bottom of the display screen.

**Exposure value**: allows you to adjust the brightness level by moving the slider.



#### Settings (continued):

**Focus mode**: allows you to set this option to Auto focus or Macro. Use Auto focus for all other focal situations.

**Timer**: allows you to set a timer for how long to wait before taking a picture. Options include: Off, 2 sec, 5 sec, and 10 sec.

Effects: allows you to change the color tone or apply special effects to the photo. Options include: None, Negative, Black and white, Sepia, Washed out, Cold vintage, Warm vintage, Posterize, Solarize, Blue point, Green point, or Red-yellow point.

**Resolution**: allows you to set the image size to either: 8M (3264x2448), W6M (3264x1836), 3.2M (2048x1536), W2.4M (2048x1152), W0.9M (1280x720), or 0.3M (640x480).

White balance: allows you to set this option to one of the following choices: Auto, Daylight, Cloudy, Incandescent. or Fluorescent.



#### Settings (continued):

ISO: ISO determines how sensitive the light meter is on your digital camera. Choose from Auto, 100, 200, 400, or 800. Use a lower ISO number to make your camera less sensitive to light, a higher ISO number to take photos with less light, or Auto to let the camera automatically adjust the ISO for each of your shots.

Metering: allows you to set how the camera measures or meters the light source: Centre-weighted, Spot, or Matrix.

Anti-Shake: compensates for camera movement.

**Auto contrast**: provides a clear image even under backlight circumstances where intensity of illumination can vary excessively.

**Guidelines**: allows you to turn the guidelines On or Off.

**Image quality**: allows you to set the image quality to: Superfine, Fine, or Normal.

**GPS tag**: allows you to turn GPS On or Off (also known as Geotagging). The location of where the picture is taken is attached to the picture. (Only available in Camera mode.)



#### Settings (continued):

**Shutter sound**: allows you to set the Shutter sound to On or Off.

**Storage**: allows you to configure the default storage location for images or videos as either Phone or Memory card (if inserted).

**Reset**: allows you to reset all camera or camcorder settings to the default values.



Image viewer: allows you to access the Image viewer and the various viewing options for a selected picture. The last picture you took, will be displayed as a thumbnail in the Image viewer icon.



**Camera button**: takes a photo when pressed in Camera mode.



Camera Mode: allows you to take a photo in various modes. Once you change the mode, the corresponding indicator appears at the top left of the display. Slide the button up for Camera, or down for Camcorder.



**Storage location/Charge Status**: indicates the current storage location (Phone or Card) and the charge state of the device.

# **Pictures and Videos Image Viewer Options**

After you take a photo or record a video, you can access various options.

## **Photo viewing options**

**1.** Tap a thumbnail to view the picture.

**Note:** If no control icons are displayed on the screen in addition to the picture, tap anywhere on the screen to display them.

- The following options are available at the top of the screen:
  - Slideshow : allows you to see your photos in a slideshow.
  - Share via : allows you to share the picture via Group Cast, ChatON, Dropbox, Flipboard, Picasa, Google+, S Memo, Bluetooth, Wi-Fi Direct, Messaging, Gmail, and Email.
  - Delete :: allows you to delete the current picture.

#### Video viewing options

Note: If no control icons are displayed on the screen in addition to the picture, tap anywhere on the screen to display them.

- Tap a video to select it.
- 2. Tap ( to play the video.
- Press for additional options.

# **Sharing Pictures**

Pictures are the best way of remembering the moment, but an even better treat is to share them with others.

Two new features allow you to either instantly share a series of pictures as they are taken or quickly share a picture without using email or messaging.

 Share Shot is a great way to instantly share a series of pictures among a group of users. The best example for this feature is having multiple users instantly sharing each others pictures at a company or family gathering. As each person takes a separate picture with their own device, they are all pooled together and instantly appear in each user's Gallery.

No more "Email your pictures to me later". Each person walks out of the event with all the pictures taken by everyone.

This method of image transfer requires that both devices have Wi-Fi Direct active and be paired prior to use.

 S Beam Transfer uses the NFC (near Field Communication) feature found on your device to transmit large files directly to another compatible device by direct touch.

This method of image transfer requires NFC and S Beam to be enabled prior to use.

For more information, refer to "Using S Beam to Share Pictures" on page 158.

# **Enabling Share Shot**

Share shot is a Wi-Fi Direct group sharing feature where multiple users can Wi-Fi connect their devices and then all share each others pictures in real-time. This is really useful in group events (ex: family gathering or company party) where you don't want to have to email everyone later and make sure you all can share your pics at a later date.

For more information, refer to "Wi-Fi Direct Setup and Settings" on page 272.

## The general process is:

- Enable Wi-Fi Direct communication
- Pair your device with other users
- · Enable Share shot

#### To enable Wi-Fi Direct:

- Press → and then tap Settings → More settings.
- In a single motion touch and slide the Wi-Fi Direct slider to the right to turn it on ON. The slider color indicates the activation status.
- 3. Read the on-screen information and tap **OK**.

#### To enable Share shot on Camera:

- From the Home screen, tap (Camera) → (Shooting Mode) → Share shot.
- If you are prompted to activate your Wi-Fi Direct connection, tap **0K** and follow the activation procedures for Wi-Fi Direct.
- From the on-screen Wi-Fi Direct connection screen, tap Multi-connect and tap those devices you wish to share images with.

Note: Only those devices that support multi-connect are listed.

- **4.** Tap **Done** to complete the connection process.
- Each partner (including yourself) must then tap Accept to consent to the new Wi-Fi Direct pairing.

#### To configure your Share Shot options:

- Confirm the Share Shot viewfinder is active (see below).
- Confirm the Wi-Fi is actively sharing icon appears at the top of the viewfinder window.
- Tap (Share profiles with) to display list of current participants.
  - Stop sharing images with select participants by tapping their entry and removing the green check mark.
- 4. Tap (Shooting modes) to display list of currently available shooting modes from within Share Shot.
- 5. Tap (Settings) to disable share shot while maintaining a Wi-Fi Direct connection.

#### To take share shot images:

- 1. Press (Camera key) until the shutter sounds.
- From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (Gallery) to locate your newly shot images located in their default storage location.
  - External users will be able to locate their images in either a downloaded or RECV (received) folder.

3. Confirm (Share shot images delivered/received) appears in the Notifications area of the screen.

## **Using S Beam to Share Pictures**

This feature (when activated via NFC) allows you to beam large files directly to another compatible device that is in direct contact. These files can be larger, such as Videos, HD pictures, and other large files. You can beam images and videos from your gallery, music files from your music player, and more.

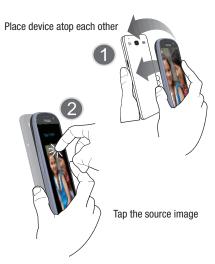
- Press → and then tap Settings → More settings.
- Tap the NFC field. A check mark displayed next to the feature indicating it is enabled.
- 3. Tap S Beam and make sure the feature is turned on.
- 4. If not already active, in a single motion touch and slide the **S** Beam slider to the right to turn it on ON.
- On the source device (containing the desired image or video), tap (Apps) → (Gallery).
- **6.** Locate and tap the selected image to open it in the preview window.

Important! Neither device must be in Lock mode or displaying the Lock screen. They must both be active and unlocked. It is recommended that the target device be on the Home screen.

Place the two active NFC-enabled devices back to back to begin (1).

Note: If the Touch to beam screen does not appear on the source device:

- Pull them apart
- Verify the image is visible in the preview window on the source device (providing the file)
- Place them together again
- 8. From the Touch to beam screen, tap the reduced image preview to begin the transfer (2). After a few seconds (depending on file size) the recipient with then see the transferred file displayed on their screen.



## **Camera Gallery Options**

The Gallery is where you can access the Gallery of stored camera images.

1. From the Home screen, tap  $(Apps) \rightarrow (Apps)$ (Gallery).



2. Select a folder location (ex: Camera) and tap an image to open it.

- or -

Touch and hold an image to place a box around the file and select multiple files.

- or -

Tap the upper-right camera to begin taking pictures that are placed in this folder.

- or -
- 3. From the top of the window tap to configure several slideshow playback settings such:
  - **Effect**: allows you to configure the fade effects used when the image progresses from one to another.

- Music: allows you to assign the background music played during the slideshow. Turn on the feature and select from either **Choose music track** (Google Play) or **Music player**.
- Speed: assigns the length of time an image remains on-screen.
- Tap **Start** to begin the slideshow.

### **Picture Options**

- 1. From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (Gallery).
- 2. Select a folder location and tap a file to open it in the Image viewer. Touch and drag a picture to the left to see the next picture or to the right to see the previous picture.

- 3. Tap the on-screen image and use either of the following image menu options:
  - Share via : allows you to share the picture via Group Cast, ChatON, Dropbox, Flipboard, Picasa, Google+, S Memo, Bluetooth, Wi-Fi Direct, Messaging, Gmail, or Email.
    - AllShare Group Cast : allows to share images directly with other Wi-Fi connected participants via Group Cast.
  - Slideshow : allows you to see your photos in a slideshow or access the slideshow settings. Configure the slideshow settings (Effect, Music, and Speed) then tap Start to begin the playback.
  - **Delete** : allows you to delete the current picture.
- **4.** Press **t** to select additional options:
  - Face tag: allows you add embedded tag information about those in your image.
  - Copy to clipboard: allows you to copy one or more pictures to a different folder
  - Rotate left: allows you to rotate the view of the current image in a counterclockwise direction.
  - Rotate right: allows you to rotate the view of the current image in a clockwise direction.

- Crop: provides an on-screen box that allows you to crop the current picture. Tap Save to update the image with the new dimensions or tap Discard to ignore any changes.
- Edit: launches the photo editor application. This application can be downloaded from the Play Store. For more information, refer to "Photo Editor" on page 169.
- Set picture as: allows you to assign the current image as a Contact photo, Home and lock screens, Home screen wallpaper, or Lock screen wallpaper.
- Buddy photo share: allows you to share the current image with active ChatON buddies.
- Print: allows you to print the current image on a compatible Samsung printer.
- Rename: allows you to rename the current file.
- Details: files details such as Title, Time, Width, Height, Orientation, File Size, and Path.

# Screen Sharing an Image via Group Cast

Important! Verify all of your recipients are connected to the same Wi-Fi.

1. From the Home screen, tap  $(Apps) \rightarrow (Apps)$ (Gallery).





(AllShare Play - Group Cast)

- Enter a security PIN and tap **Done**. This process makes sure only desired recipients can view your shared image.
- Recipients must launch AllShare Play on their devices. Your device then waits for other connected recipients on the same Wi-Fi network to accept the connection and enter the PIN on their screens.

- or -

Tap Start Group Cast anyway to continue the process while your users connect.

You can now interact and draw with the on-screen image, users will instantaneously see the same gestures and also be able to interact.

**Note:** The newly altered image (with markups and comments) can not be saved, but you can take a screen shot of the current image and save it to your Clipboard. For more information, refer to "Using Gestures" on page 54.

# Sharing a Gallery Image to a Target Device

Important! Make sure all communicating devices are connected to the same Wi-Fi.

- 1. Launch AllShare on the target device (such as an Internet TV, Samsung Tablet, etc..).
- 2. From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (Gallery).

Note: You must be signed in to your Samsung Account before you can use this feature.

- 3. Open a selected image.
- Tap | (Stream to connected devices) and select an available target device to begin streaming.

**5.** On a target device (ex: Internet TV) select the on-screen **Allow** button to continue.

**Note:** At this stage your device is requesting access to share media with the external source.

 Confirm (AllShare Controller enabled) appears in the Notification area at the top of the device to indicate you are using your device as the media source.

### Taking a Screen Shot

Also known as a screen capture, this feature allows you to mimic the print screen function on most computers.

- Press → □
   and then tap Settings
   → Motion → Motion
   activation.
- Tap the desired on-screen motion option.



- Although enabled by default, enable the Palm swipe to capture field by placing a check mark in the adjacent field.
- 4. With the current screen showing the desired image, in a single motion, place the side of your palm along the one side of the device and then slowly swipe it in the opposite direction over the screen.

## Assigning an Image as a Contact Photo

- From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (Gallery).
- 2. Select a folder location and tap a file to open it.
- With the image displayed, press and then tap Set picture as → Contact photo.
- Tap a contact to make a selection.
- Use the on-screen crop the image by dragging it around or out from its corners.
- **6.** Tap **Done** to store the new image.

# Assigning an Image as a Wallpaper

- 1. From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (Gallery).
- Select a folder location and tap a file to open it.
- With the image displayed, press and then tap **Set** picture as.
- 4. Select one of the two options:
  - Home and lock screens assigns the current image to both the Home screen and Lock screens.
  - Home screen wallpaper assigns the current image to the home screen background. This image is spread across all available screens.
  - Lock screen wallpaper assigns the selected image to the background for the lock screen.
- **5.** Touch and drag the crop box anywhere on the picture. Touch and drag the sides of the crop box to zoom in or out to create a cropped area.
- Tap **Done** to assign the wallpaper image.
  - or -

Tap **Cancel** to stop without updating the wallpaper image.

## **Editing a Photo**

You can edit your photos using the optional Photo editor application on your device. For more information, refer to "Photo Editor" on page 169.

# **Using the Camcorder**

In addition to taking photos, the camera also doubles as a camcorder that also allows you to record, view, and send high definition videos.

Note: To ensure the Camcorder can record the video, use an SDHC memory card.

## **Shooting Video**

Tip: When shooting video in direct sunlight or in bright conditions, it is recommended that you provide your subject with sufficient light by having the light source behind you.

- From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (Camera) to activate the camera mode.
- Tap and slide the Camera mode button down to Camcorder Mode.
- Using the phone's main display screen as a viewfinder, adjust the image by aiming the camcorder at the subject.

Note: Use either the Up and Down volume keys or spread/ pinch the screen to zoom in or out. For more information, refer to "Navigating Through the Screens" on page 51.

**4.** Tap the Video key ( ) to begin shooting video. The red light will blink while recording.

- Tap anywhere on the screen to re-focus the camera on that object. The camcorder auto-focuses on the new target area.
- 6. Tap the screen then select to turn on auto focus. This will automatically focus the video based on the object at the middle of the screen.
- To capture an image from the video while recording, tap . This feature is not available while the anti-shake feature is activated.
- **8.** Tap the Video key ( ) again to stop the recording and save the video file to your Camera folder.
- Once the file has been saved, tap the image viewer, then tap (Play) to playback your video for review.
- **10.** Press **to** return to the viewer.

Note: Zooming is not supported while recording Full HD video. Adjust to a lower resolution to regain this functionality.

### **Camcorder Options**

You can change options using your keypad in capture mode. The following short cuts are available:



**Self portrait**: allows you to activate the front facing camera so you can take videos of yourself or video chat.



**Flash**: allows you to set the flash options to Off or On. When you set the flash to On, it stays on continually while you are taking a video.



Recording mode: allows you to set the recording mode to: Normal, which is limited only by available space on the destination location, Limit for MMS, which is limited by MMS size restrictions.



Effects: allows you to change the color tone or apply special effects to the video. Options include: None, Negative, Black and white, Sepia, Washed out, Cold vintage, Warm vintage, Posterize, Solarize, Blue point, Green point, or Red-vellow point.



#### Settings:

**Edit shortcuts**: allows you to set shortcut icons for the settings that you use the most.

**Self-recording**: allows you to set the front camera so you can take videos of yourself or video chat.

Flash: allows you to set the flash options to Off or On. When you set the flash to On, it stays on continually while you are taking a video.

**Recording mode:** allows you to set the recording mode to:

- Normal: is limited only by available space on the destination location.
- Limit MMS: is limited by MMS size restrictions.



#### Settings (continued):

**Exposure value**: allows you to adjust the brightness level by moving the slider.

**Timer**: allows you to set a timer for how long to wait before taking a video. Options include: Off, 2 sec, 5 sec, and 10 sec.

Effects: allows you to change the color tone or apply special effects to the video. Options include: None, Negative, Black and white, Sepia, Washed out, Cold vintage, Warm vintage, Posterize, Solarize, Blue point, Green point, or Red-yellow point.

**Resolution**: allows you to set the image size to either: 1920x1080, 1280x720, 720x480, 640x480, or 320x240.

White balance: allows you to set this option to one of the following choices: Auto, Daylight, Cloudy, Incandescent, or Fluorescent.

**Anti-Shake**: reduces image blur due to the movement of the subject of the video or hand movement.

**Guidelines**: allows you to turn the guidelines On or Off. **Video quality**: allows you to set the image quality to: Superfine, Fine, or Normal.



#### Settings (continued):

Storage: allows you to configure the default storage location for images or videos as either Phone or Memory card (if inserted).

**Reset**: allows you to reset all camera or camcorder settings to the default values.



Image viewer: allows you to access the Image viewer and the various viewing options for a selected video. Image viewer options are described in the following section. The last video you took, will be displayed as a thumbnail in the Image viewer icon.



**Camcorder button**: shoots or stops video recording when pressed in Camcorder mode.



**Live Shooting**: takes a photo during a video recording session in Camcorder mode.

**Note:** This feature is not functional when the Anti-Shake feature is activated.



**Camcorder Mode**: allows you to shoot video. Slide the button up for Camera mode or down for Camcorder mode.



Storage location/Charge Status: indicates the current storage location (Phone or Card) and the charge state of the device.

### **Accessing Videos**

When you shoot a video, the file is saved in the Camera folder. You can view your videos immediately or view them anytime in the Camera folder.

- From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (Gallery).
- Select a folder location and tap a video icon to begin video playback.
  - or -

Touch and hold the video icon from the main Gallery to select the video (indicated by a colored border) and display the following video menu context options:

- Share via : allows you to share the video via ChatON, Dropbox, Google+, Bluetooth, Wi-Fi Direct, Messaging, YouTube, Gmail, or Email.
- **Delete** : allows you to delete the current video. Choose either OK or Cancel.
- More : provides you with the additional options such as:
  - Slideshow: allows you to create a slideshow of the currently selected files
  - **Rename**: allows you to rename one or more video files.
- Details: displays video file information.

#### **Photo Editor**

The Photo editor is not load loaded on your device and must be downloaded via the Samsung Apps.

The application provides basic editing functions for pictures that you take on your phone. Along with basic image tuning like brightness, contrast, and color it also provides a wide variety of effects used for editing the picture.

# **Installing the application from Samsung Apps**

- From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (Gallery).
- 2. Select a folder location and tap a file to open it.
- 3. With the image displayed, press and then tap Edit.
- Tap Download and follow the on-screen instructions to begin the download process.
- 5. If prompted, accept the Samsung Apps agreement.
- **6.** Tap the **Get** to continue.
- Log into Samsung Account by either tapping Create new account or Sign in using your existing Samsung account information. Follow the on-screen log in screens.

If prompted, tap Get again to initiate the download process.

## **Using the Photo Editor**

- From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (Photo editor).
- Tap Select image to edit a picture in your Gallery.
   or –

Tap **Take picture** to take a picture with the camera.

- 3. Tap the picture and it is loaded into the Photo editor.
- 4. Use the following Photo editor controls to edit your picture:



Undo: move to previous photo project.



Redo: move to next photo project.



Resize: allows you to resize the current image.



**Rotate**: allows you to rotate a photo in all 4 directions. You can also mirror image a photo.



**Crop**: allows you to crop (cut-out) an area of a photo.



**Color**: allows you to adjust the Original, Auto adjustment, Brightness, Contrast, Saturation, Adjust RGB, Temperature, Exposure, Hue, Darken, or Lighten.



**Effect**: allows you to add various effects to your photo.



**Decoration**: allows you to placed Frames, Stickers, or Multi-grids on your image. If you select Drawing, you can also use the Pen and Eraser tools.

- **5.** Press **i** to access the following options:
  - Select image: selects an existing image from your Gallery and starts a new Photo editor project. Be sure and save the photo you are working on before starting a new project.
  - Take picture: launches the camera and allows you to take a new picture to then use as a new Photo editor project.
  - Save: saves your photo to your gallery.
  - Share via: allows you to share your photo via Bluetooth, ChatON, Dropbox, Email, Flipboard, Gmail, Google+, Group Cast, Messaging, Picasa, S Memo, or Wi-Fi Direct.
  - Set as: sets the new image as either your Contact photo, Home and lock screens, Home screen wallpaper, or Lock screen wallpaper.

# The Gallery

The Gallery is where you view photos and play back videos. For photos, you can also perform basic editing tasks, view a slideshow, set photos as wallpaper or caller image, and share as a picture message.

**Note:** If the phone displays a memory full message when accessing the Gallery, access Files and remove some of the media files from the folders, and then open the Gallery.

# **Opening the Gallery**

■ From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (Gallery). For more information, refer to "Camera Gallery Options" on page 160.

Note: If you stored your files in folders (directories) on the storage card. Gallery displays these folders as separate albums. The top left album contains all the pictures in the storage card.

## Viewing a Video within the Gallery

- 1. From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (Gallery).
- Locate your folder and video.
- Tap (Play) to playback your video.

For more information on using the Picture-in-Picture feature for video playback, see "Using Picture-In-Picture" on page 172.

# **Using the Video Player**

The Video Player application plays video files stored on the SD card. This device is able to playback DivX videos.

- 1. From the Home screen, tap  $(Apps) \rightarrow$ (Video Player). A list of available videos displays in the Video list.
- Tap a video file to begin viewing.

### **Sharing Videos**

- From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (Video Player). After a few seconds, each on-screen video begins to cycle through a preview of the first five seconds of the clip.
- 2. Press and then tap Share via.
- Select a sharing option. Choose from: ChatON, Dropbox, Google+, Bluetooth, Wi-Fi Direct, Messaging, YouTube, Gmail, and Email.
- 4. Select either individual videos or tap Select all.
- 5. Click Done to complete the process or Cancel to quit.

## **Using Picture-In-Picture**

This feature can be used during playback of supported video types via either the Gallery, Play Videos, or Video player.

**Note:** Some applications might not allow this video to remain active in the foreground (ex: Camera/Camcorder screen).

This feature allows you to continue to view your video as a background operation while you multi-task and do other things, such as surf the Internet, access your Contacts list, look for a picture, etc..

- 1. From the Home screen, tap (Apps).
- 2. Tap the desired video playback application.
- **3.** Tap the desired video to begin playback.



Note: The Picture-In-Picture feature only works when using the Video player application. Other video players (ex: YouTube), do not support this feature.

- 4. As playback is initiated, locate and tap (Picture-in-Picture) from the bottom-right of the playback screen. Your current video is then sent to foreground of any new page and most application screens.
- **5.** The video disappears from the screen once it ends.

#### **DivX Overview**

This device is able to playback DivX videos. DivX Certified<sup>®</sup> to play DivX<sup>®</sup> video up to HD 720p, including premium content. If you try to play DivX VOD content not authorized for your device, the message "Authorization Error" will be displayed and your content will not play. Learn more at <a href="https://www.divx.com/vod">www.divx.com/vod</a>.

Your device must first be registered to playback protected or purchased DivX content. DRM-free or unprotected content does not required DivX VOD registration.

# **Locating Your VOD Registration Number**

- Press → □ and then tap Settings → About device → Legal information → License settings → DivX® VOD > Register.
- 2. Write down your Registration code.
- **3.** Tap **0K**.

## Register Your DivX Device for VOD Playback of Purchased Movies

To play purchased DivX movies on your device, you will first need to complete a one-time registration using both your device and your computer.

- 1. Write down the DivX registration code that appears on-screen. Copy this 8 or 10-digit number down.
- Verify you have the latest DivX software running on your computer. Download the free player (for your computer) from www.divx.com.
- Open the DivX Player on your computer and from within the VOD menu, select Register a DivX Certified Device..

- You are prompted to log in or create a DivX account if your account information has not already been saved in DivX Player.
- 5. Follow the instructions in DivX Player to enter the registration code from step 2 and create a device nickname (ex: "Pat or Pat's Device").
- Select a location on your computer to download the DivX registration video with the same title



- as your device nickname (ex: Pat.divx).
- Follow the on-screen instructions to download the file and initiate the transfer process. You will need to place this video file onto your device and play it back.

- Connect your device to the computer via USB and transfer this video. For more information, refer to "Communicating with the SD card" on page 66.
- From the Registration screen (Transfer), click Transfer Video now and select the location of the microSD card or USB (the device) as the target destination for the registration video (created in step 6) and click Start.
   or –

Locate the created file, copy and paste it into the new drive letter corresponding to your device's storage location.

- **10.** From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (My files).
- Locate your registration DivX video file and tap the file to play it. Once you play the registration file on your device, your registration is complete.
- 12. Return to the DivX VOD Manager screen (from within your computer's DivX Player) and confirm both your computer and your new device appears in the list of registered DivX devices.

Important! There is no special registration or configuration necessary to playback DRM-free DivX movies.

Registration of your device is only required for playback of protected DivX material.

#### **Media Hub**

Samsung Media Hub is your one stop for the hottest movie and TV content. With hundreds of titles available, entertaining your family on the go was never easier. You can rent or purchase your favorite content and watch from any location. Featuring the stunning viewing quality Samsung is known for, Samsung Media Hub is your gateway to mobile video like you've never experienced it before.

You must have the Samsung Account application installed and registered prior to using Media Hub.

Note: Media Hub usage is based on service availability.

Important! You must be using an active Wi-Fi/4G connection to preview and download a media file.

The internal memory acts as a storage location for your downloaded rental or purchase.

Important! The Samsung account manages the access information (username/password) to several applications, such as AllShare Play, Chat On, and Media Hub.

# **Creating a New Media Hub Account**

Before you can rent or buy media, you must first create an account. Enter the required information.

- Confirm you have already logged in to your Samsung account. There should be no icon in the Notifications area of the screen.
- 2. From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (Media Hub).
- Read the Terms and Conditions screen and tap the I agree to the Terms and Conditions check box.
- Tap Accept to continue or Decline to exit. The Media Hub screen displays.
- 5. Press and then tap My Profile.

Note: Your Media Hub account is managed by the Samsung account application. This application manages your user profile information.

6. If not already signed in, use the keypad to enter the required information, then tap Create new account. Follow the on-screen instructions to complete your registration for a new Samsung account.

## **Using Media Hub**

- From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (Media Hub).
- At the Media Hub screen, What's New is displayed with recently added media that you can rent or purchase.
- 3. The following tabs are displayed at the top of the screen:
  - **Home**: displays the Media Hub main screen.
  - Movies: displays movies that are available for rent or purchase.
     Scroll through the top navigation bar and select a movie category. The movies of that type will be displayed below.

- TV Shows: displays TV shows that are available for purchase.
   Scroll through the top navigation bar and select a TV category.
   The TV shows of that type will be displayed below.
- My Media: allows you to view all of the media that you have purchased or rented. Tap a media entry to view it.
- **4.** Scroll through the media listings and tap on an item you would like to purchase or rent.
- 5. Tap tap Buy or Rent.
- Choose a payment method and then follow the on-screen instructions. The media stores to the My Media folder.

#### **Media Hub Notices**

- Any media item (Media Content) may be rented or purchased after you create an account in Media Hub.
- Media Content that is downloaded may be viewed concurrently on up to five (5) devices with Media Hub that are also registered to the same account.
- You may choose to remove a device from your account no more than once every 90 days.

- You may remove Media Content from a device as many times as you'd like. You will have the ability to re-download the Media Content at a later point in time subject to content re-download availability and studio permissions.
- You MUST be in network coverage to license Media Content you have acquired through the Service.
- You can use 3G, 4G, or Wi-Fi connectivity in order to download Media Content.
- Unlike purchased Media Content, rented Media Content will be viewable on only 1 device in your account.
- Media Content is downloaded and saved to internal memory.
   No SD Card included out of box.
- Your Media Content may pause/stop or not download in networks where there is a weak signal.
- You may begin watching downloaded Media Content as soon as a) license acquisition has occurred and b) sufficient amount of the Media Content has been buffered.
- You must finish watching rented Media Content within 24 consecutive hours of start of playback.
  - Stopping, pausing or restarting rented Media Content does not extend the available viewing time.

- In no event will rented Media Content be available for a period of more than thirty (30) days (or shorter on a title-by-title basis) after the Media Content has been rented (e.g., if you begin viewing rented Media Content on the 29th day after the rental transaction, but do not finish viewing the entire title, that rented Media Content may not be available for the entire twenty-four (24) consecutive hour period if such period would extend the viewable time beyond the thirty (30) day rental window).
- You cannot play any media content downloaded from Media Hub through any output on your mobile phone, including All Share.

# **Play Movies**

This application allows you to connect to the Play Store, download a movie and then watch it instantly.

Choose from thousands of movies, including new releases and HD titles in the Play Store and stream them instantly on your Android phone or tablet.

Movies, previously rented via the Play Store are automatically added to your My Movies library across your devices.

Learn more about Google Play Movies at:

http://plav.google.com/about/movies.

- 1. From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (Play Movies).
- Log on to your Google account if you have not already done so. A list of videos sorted on the SD card displays in the Video list
- Following the on-screen instructions for renting and viewing movies.
- Tap the MY RENTALS tab to view movies you have rented.
- Tap the PERSONAL VIDEOS tab to view movies you have on your phone or memory card.

For more information on using the Picture-in-Picture feature for video playback, see "Using Picture-In-Picture" on page 172.

# **Play Music**

Also known as Google Music, allows you to browse, shop, and playback songs purchased from the Play Store. The music you choose is automatically stored in your Google Music library and instantly ready to play or download.

 Access the new music tab from within your Play Store application.

The Music application contains a music player that plays music and other audio files that you copy from your computer.

From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (Play Music).

The Music app searches both your online library and your device's internal storage for music and playlists; this can take from a few seconds to several minutes, depending on the amount of new music added since you last opened the application. It then displays a carousel view of your new and recent music, organized by album.

- 2. If prompted, follow the on-screen instructions to link your current account to Google Play Music.
- 3. Tap an on-screen account to add it or select Add account to use a new account.
- 4. At the free songs screen, select either Get free songs or Skip.
  - Get free songs are downloaded via either the Internet or Play Store.
  - Follow the on-screen download and installation instructions.
- 5. Swipe left or right to browse through your new and available music. Music. albums, and artists are grouped into categories.
- Tap an on-screen album to open it and begin playback.
- 7. Return to the Library screen from most other screens in the Music application by tapping the Music application icon (Music notification icon) at the top-left of the Application bar.

# **Changing Library View**

You can change the way you view the contents of your library.

1. From the Home screen, tap  $\Longrightarrow$  (Apps)  $\Rightarrow$ 🖣 📦 (Play Music).



- 2. While in a selection or screen, tap 🙀 📦 (near the top-left of the Application bar) or the tab name to back up to the main Music App menu.
- 3. Available tabs include: RECENT, ARTISTS, ALBUMS, SONGS. PLAYLISTS. or GENRES.

**Note:** The contents of your library display in a scrolling grid or list view, depending on the view.

## **Searching for Music in Your Library**

- From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (Play Music).
- 2. Tap (Search) to search through your available songs.
- Type the name of an artist, album, song, or playlist. Matching songs are displayed in a list below the search box.
- **4.** Tap a matching song to play it, tap a matching album, artist or playlist to view a list of its' songs.

## **Changing Music Settings**

- From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (Play Music).
- **2.** Press and then make a selection.
  - Shuffle all: Play all songs in a random order.
  - **Settings**: Provides access to the Play Music settings.
  - Help: Displays application help information.

## **Listening to Music**

You can listen to music by using your device's built-in speakers, through a wired headset, or through a wireless Bluetooth stereo headset.

Press the volume keys on the side of the device to activate on-screen volume control, then touch and drag on the scale to set volume.

## **Playing Music**

- From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (Play Music).
- **2.** Tap a song in your library to listen to it.
  - or While viewing a list of songs, tap
    (Options) next to a song and tap Play.
  - or –



While viewing a list of albums, artists, playlists, or genres, tap (Options) adjacent to the label and tap Play.

The **Now playing** screen opens and the song you touched or the first song in the album or playlist starts to play. The tracks in the current list play in order until you reach the end of the list (unless you choose a repeat option). Otherwise, playback stops only if you stop it, even when you switch applications.

Note: If you navigate away from the Now playing screen in the Music application, the Now Playing bar appears at the bottom of the screen

## **Displaying the Now Playing Screen**

If you navigate away from the **Now playing** screen, to return to the **Now playing** screen from other Music screens:

- Tap the name of the current song in the Now Playing har
  - or -

In a single motion, touch and drag (Music notification icon) down from the Status bar and tap the song title from the Notifications area. You can also pause and resume playback and skip to the next song in the panel. For more information, refer to "Notification Bar" on page 36.

## **Tab Options**

There are various options available from the various tabs:

- From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (Play Music).
- 2. Select one of the following tabs and tap an available option.
  - RECENT: to display the most recently played songs and albums
  - ARTISTS: Play, Add to playlist, More by artist, Shop for artist, or Search.

to access

- ALBUMS: Play, Add to playlist, More by artist, Shop for artist, or Search.
- **SONGS:** Play, Add to playlist, Shop for artist, Delete, or Search.
- PLAYLIST: Play, Rename, or Edit.
- GENRES: Play, Add to playlist, More by artist, Shop for artist, or Search.

# **Options While Playing a Song**

When you play a song, the **Now playing** screen displays. There are various options and controls available while a song is playing:

- From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (Play Music).
- 2. Tap an album or song.
- From the Now playing screen, press (Menu) to display the following options:
  - Sound effects: Applies selected sound effects.
  - Show/Hide options: View additional playback features such as shuffle and repeat.
  - Settings: Allows you to view information such as Open source licenses and Music version.

- Tap → Add to playlist to add the song to a playlist.
   or -
  - Tap → Add to playlist to add the song to a playlist.
- Tap the ARTIST name to view songs related to this artist.
- Tap the ALBUM name to view or play other songs on the album.

The **Now playing** screen contains several buttons that you can tap to control the playback of songs, albums, and playlists:

- Tap to go back to the previous song. Touch and hold to scan backward through the current song.
- Tap to resume playback.
- Tap to pause playback.
- Tap to advance to the next song. Touch and hold to scan forward through the current song.



When Shuffle mode is enabled via **Show Options**, songs play in random order. When disabled (as shown), songs play in the order they appear in List view. Also visible when



When Shuffle mode is enabled via **Show Options**, songs play in random order. When enabled, songs play in random order. Also visible when is tapped.



Tap to repeat the current song, repeat all songs, or disable repeat mode. Also visible when



#### **Creating a Playlist**

- From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (Play Music).
- 2. Tap an album or song list and play a song.
- Tap → adjacent to the song name and select Add to playlist.

- Tap New playlist → Playlist name field to enter a name for the playlist.
- 5. Tap **0K** to save the new playlist.

# **Adding Songs to Playlists**

- From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (Play Music).
- 2. Tap an album or song list and play a song.
- Tap → adjacent to the song name and select Add to playlist.
- Select the desired target playlist.

## **Playing a Playlist**

- From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (Play Music).
- Select the PLAYLISTS tab.
- 3. Tap next to a playlist title and tap Play.

#### **Deleting a Playlist**

- From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (Play Music).
- 2. Display the PLAYLISTS library view.
- Tap next to a playlist title and tap Delete.

# **Music Player**

The Music Player is an application that can play music files. The music player supports files with extensions AAC, AAC+, eAAC+, MP3, WMA, 3GP, MP4, and M4A. Launching the Music Player allows you to navigate through your music library, play songs, and create playlists (music files bigger than 300 KB are displayed).

## **Playing Music**

- 1. From the Home screen, tap  $\iff$  (Apps)  $\Rightarrow$ (Music Player).
- **2.** Tap a library category tab to select the music category: All. Playlists. Albums. Artists. Music square. or Folders.
- 3. Scroll through the list and tap an entry to begin playback.

Note: The 5.1 channel sound effect works when earphones or sound is connected through the headset jack only.

- 4. Use any of the following Music Player controls:
  - Ш Pause the song.
  - Start the song after pausing.
  - Press and hold to rewind the song. Tap to go to previous song.
  - **W** Press and hold to fast-forward the song. Tap to go to next song.
  - Volume control.
- <u>A</u>, Plays the entire song list once.
- (Ā) Replays the current list when the list ends.
- [j] >≉ Repeats the currently playing song.
- shuffles the current list of songs randomly.
- \* songs play in order and are not shuffled.
- provides access to the Music square.
- **※ □** lists the current playlist songs
- displays the current song in the player window
  - provides access to the Equalizer

# Making a Song a Phone Ringtone

- From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (Music Player).
- 2. Tap the All tab.
- Touch and hold a song from the list to reveal the on-screen context menu.
- 4. Tap Set as → Phone ringtone.

## **Music Player Options**

The Music Player Settings menu allows you to set preferences for the music player such as whether you want the music to play in the background, sound effects, and how the music menu displays.

- With the Music player application displayed and playing a song, press and select one of the following options:
  - . Add to quick list: adds the current music file to the Quick list.
  - Via Bluetooth: scans for devices and pairs with a Bluetooth headset.
  - Share music via: allows you to share your music by using Bluetooth, Dropbox, Email, Gmail, Group Cast, Messaging, or Wi-Fi Direct.

- Add to playlist: allows you to add the current music file to a selected playlist.
- Details: allows you to view media info such as Artist, Title, Album, Track length, Genre, Track number, Format, Size, and Location
- Set as: allows you to set the current song as a Phone ringtone,
   Caller ringtone, or Alarm tone.
- Scan for nearby devices: allows you to look for DLNA compliant devices used to control streaming media.
- **Settings**: allows you to change your music player settings.
- End: closes the application.

## **Music Player Settings**

The Music Player Settings menu allows you to set preferences for the music player such as whether you want the music to play in the background, sound effects, and how the music menu displays.

- From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (Music Player).
- 2. Press 
  → Settings.
- 3. Select one of the following settings:

- **SoundAlive**: set a type of equalization such as Normal, Pop, Rock, Jazz, Dance, Classic, etc.
- Play speed: set the play speed anywhere between 0.5X and 2.0X using the slider.
- Music menu: this menu allows you to select which categories you want to display. Choices are: Albums, Artists, Genres, Music square, Folders, Composers, Years, Most played, Recently played, or Recently added. Tap each item that you want to display in the Music menu.
- Lyrics: when activated, the lyrics of the song are displayed if available.
- Music auto off: when activated, music will automatically turn off after a set interval.

# **Using Playlists**

Playlists are used to assign music files into groups for playback. These Playlists can be created using the Music player on this device, or using a third-party application (such as Windows Media Player) and downloading those files to an SD card inserted into the device.

# **Creating a Playlist**

- From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (Music Player).
- 2. Tap the Playlists tab.
- 3. Press and then tap Create playlist.
- Backspace over the default playlist title and type a new name for this playlist, then tap **0K**.

# **Adding Music to a Playlist**

- From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (Music Player).
- Tap the Playlists tab.
- 3. Tap the playlist name in which to add music.
- 4. Press and then tap Add.

– or –

Tap (Add music). This option is available within user-created playlists.

Note: If a playlist is empty, add a song by touching a holding a song name from the main screen to open the context menu. Select Add to playlist and choose the playlist. 5. Tap a music file, or tap **Select all** to add all the music tracks to this playlist then tap **Done**.

# Removing Music from a Playlist

- 1. From the Home screen, tap (Apps) →
  - (Music Player).
- 2. Tap the Playlists tab.
- 3. Tap the playlist name in which to delete music.
- Touch and hold a song to reveal the on-screen context menu.
- Tap Remove.

## **Editing a Playlist**

Besides adding and removing music files in a playlist, you can also share, delete, or rename the playlist.

**Note:** Only those playlist you have created can be edited. Default playlists can not be renamed.

- From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (Music Player).
- 2. Tap the Playlists tab.

- Touch and hold a playlist entry to reveal the on-screen context menu.
- 4. Tap Edit title.
- 5. Enter a new name for this playlist and tap **OK**.

# **Transferring Music Files**

Music files can be downloaded to the phone using one of two methods:

- Downloaded to the device from the Play Store. Music files are directly stored on your phone.
- Downloaded to the phone via a direct USB connection. Music files are stored into a Music folder on the SD card.

For more information, refer to "Communicating with the SD card" on page 66.

## **Removing Music Files**

- 1. From the Home screen, tap (Apps) →
  - (Music Player).
- Tap the All tab.
- Touch and hold a song entry to reveal the on-screen context menu.
- Tap Delete → OK. The music file(s) is deleted.

#### **Music Hub**

Samsung Music Hub makes your device a personal music manager. It lets you access, buy, and download millions of music tracks. Access top albums, top tracks, featured albums, and new releases as well as search for tracks, albums and artist. Enjoy music samples before you download them from your device.

Note: You must sign up for an account before accessing some of the Music Hub options.

- From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (Music Hub).
- Read the Disclaimer and tap Confirm to continue or (Back) to exit. The Music Hub Home screen displays.
- **3.** Tap one of the following options:
  - Featured: This is the Music Hub home screen. Displays top albums, featured albums, top tracks, new releases, and more.
     Tap an item to display more information and prices.
  - Genres: Displays bestsellers and new releases by genre, such as pop, rock, jazz, comedy, and blues.

- Playlists: Displays downloaded playlists and your library of songs and albums. Tap New to create a new playlist.
- **My page**: Displays the following options:
  - Basket: Displays songs that you have selected to buy. Tap Buy
    to start the purchase process. Tap Menu → Delete all to clear
    your basket or tap Remove to delete songs from your basket.
  - Purchase List: Displays a list of your purchases.
  - Payment information: Allows you to set up your payment method. Tap Add card to enter your payment information.
  - Help: Display help information for Music Hub.

Note: You have to be signed in to use some options.

To sign in, tap Sign in and use the keyboard to enter your Email address and Music Hub Password.

Tap Create account to set up a new account.

4. Tap (Search) and use the keyboard to enter a key word or phrase to search for tracks, albums, or artists. Tap on the keyboard to search Music Hub. Select an item to play a sample, add an item to your basket, or add an item to your album.

#### Making a Purchase

You can use Music Hub to buy albums or individual tracks. You can also build your own album from various tracks.

- From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (Music Hub).
- 2. Select an album or a track.
- Tap (Cart) next to an album to add the album to your basket or next to each track that you want to add to your basket.
- **4.** Tap + (Add) next to the album to add it to your album.
  - or -
- Tap (Add) next to each track that you want to add to your album.
- 6. Tap New to create a new album.

# **AllShare Play**

This application wirelessly synchronizes your Samsung device with your TV, streams content and even keeps tabs on who calls or sends text messages with real-time, on-screen monitoring. Samsung's AllShare makes staying connected easy.

Allows users to share their in-device media content with other external devices using DLNA certified™ (Digital Living Network Alliance) Devices. These external devices must also be DLNA-compliant. Wi-Fi capability can be provided to TVs via a digital multimedia streamer.

Important! You must first connect both of your communicating devices to the same Wi-Fi and be using an active/registered Samsung account prior to using this application.

For more information, refer to "Wi-Fi settings" on page 264.

For more information, refer to "Creating a Samsung Account" on page 20.

**Note:** For more information on defining the various AllShare features definitions on page 203.

Important! The Samsung account manages the access information (username/password) to several applications, such as AllShare Play, Chat On, and Media Hub.

- Confirm you have already logged in to your Samsung account. There should be no icon in the Notifications area of the screen.
- 2. From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (AllShare Play).
- If prompted, read the on-screen message about network charges and tap 0K to continue and return to the main AllShare Play screen.

Note: If the main screen still shows a Sign in box, close the application and restart it.

Tap Start and follow the on-screen prompts.

The application contains two separate streaming media options:

- Registered Storage: allows you to receive and playback media stored externally (server, laptop, etc.) directly on your device by allowing you to add a Web storage service for streaming content.
- Registered Devices allows you to stream/share selected multimedia content from your device to DLNA compliant device connected to the same Wireless Access Point.

# **Configuring AllShare Settings**

The AllShare Play™ application must first be configured prior to its initial use. You must setup parameters such as connected Wi-Fi, Items to share, source server address, and external device acceptance rights.

- From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (AllShare Play).
- 2. Press and then tap **Settings** and configure the following settings as desired:
  - Registered Storage: allows you to add a Web storage location.
     Without a storage service/location added, you will not be able to use AllShare Play.

- Registered Devices: defaults to your phone. This indicates the source of the streaming images and videos. Use the main screen to add more external devices.
- Setting up web services: allows you to set up external Web services by signing in to external sites such as Facebook, Twitter, YouTube, etc..
- Auto Upload photos from mobile: allows you to setup automatic upload of images from your device to those storage locations specified within the Web storage list.
- Video quality settings: allows you to setup the video quality for streamed video content.
- Lock AllShare Play: allows you to restrict access to AllShare Play by requiring a user enter the currently active and associated Samsung account password. Tap Locking AllShare Play to activate/deactivate the feature.
- Language: allows you select a display language.
- About: displays application information.
- Contact Us: allows you to contact the AllShare team via a new email from an available email account.

## **Setting Up Web Storage**

SugarSync is a Web storage service that allows you to use storage space to store your files and share them on the "Cloud".

Note: If you are using another Web storage service, log into that service first before using AllShare Play.

. From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (AllShare Play).

**Note:** When adding storage, an N Drive is added.

- 2. From the main screen, select (Add storage) and then tap on the media that you would like to share.
  - A file with n in the upper-left indicates it is stored remotely on a Web storage location. Selecting this media causes your device to access the file currently stored on your services' servers.
- If this is your first time to use the service, set up a new account by tapping Sign up → SugarSync Sign Up.

Note: If you already have a current Sugar Sync account, tap Sign in.

- 4. Enter in your Email address and your password.
- **5.** Agree to the terms of service and tap **Sign up** or **Go** on your on-screen keyboard.

Important! After you enter your passwords, do not press to hide the keyboard. This action erases the password fields.

- You can choose to download the SugerSync app or tap Skip to continue.
- Once the process is successfully completed, the Web storage icon or name appears in the Web storage area of the main screen.

## **Sharing files via Web Storage**

Files can be uploaded to a Web storage location, such as SugerSync by either login into the service and sharing a folder on your computer with the storage location or sharing files, images, and videos from your device.

#### To upload an image on your device to Web storage:

- From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (Gallery).
- Select a folder location (ex: Camera) and open an image by tapping it once. This opens the image in the preview window.

**Note:** To select multiple images, touch and hold an image to place a colored border around the selected images.

Tap from the top of the Gallery screen. The
device then confirms the available storage locations
and begin the process of uploading the selected
images.

#### To upload a video on your device to Web storage:

- From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (Gallery).
- Select a folder location (ex: Camera) and touch and hold a video to place a colored border around the selected file.
- Tap from the top of the Gallery screen. The device then confirms the available storage locations and begin the process of uploading the selected video.

# Sharing Media via AllShare Play to a Target Device

Important! Make sure all communicating devices are connected to the same Wi-Fi.

- 1. Launch AllShare on the target device (such as an Internet TV, Samsung Tablet, etc..).
- 2. From the Home screen, tap (Apps) = (AllShare Play).

**Note:** You must be signed in to your Samsung Account before you can use this feature.

- Tap your device name from the Devices list.
- Tap an available category tab (Pictures, Music, Movies, Files, or Info) and select a file.
  - · Touch and hold to select multiple files.
  - A file with n in the upper-left indicates it is stored remotely on a Web storage location. Selecting this media causes your device to access the file currently stored on your services' servers.
- **5.** Tap an available on-screen file, image, or video to place a green check mark alongside it.
- **6.** Tap (Stream to connected devices) and select an available target device to begin streaming.
- On a target device (ex: Internet TV) select the on-screen Allow button to continue.

**Note:** At this stage your device is requesting access to share media with the external source.

8. Confirm (AllShare Controller enabled) appears in the Notification area at the top of the device to indicate you are using your device as the media source.

# AllShare Play Screen Sharing via Group Cast

Important! Verify all of your recipients are connected to the same Wi-Fi.

1. From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (Gallery).



(AllShare Play - Group Cast)

- Enter a security PIN and tap **Done**. This process makes sure only desired recipients can view your shared image.
- 4. Re-enter you PIN and tap **Done**. The device then waits for other connected recipients to accept the connection and enter the PIN on their screens.

- or -

Tap Start Group Cast anyway to continue the process while your users connect.

You can now interact and draw with the on-screen image, users will instantaneously see the same gestures and also be able to interact.

**Note:** The newly altered image (with markups and comments) can not be saved, but you can take a screen shot of the current image and save it to your Clipboard. For more information, refer to "Using Gestures" on page

#### AllShare Cast Hub

54.

This hardware allows you to enjoy what's currently on your device directly on your TV.

Note: There is no need to be connected to a Wi-Fi network or to be logged into your Samsung Account to use this feature.

AllShare Cast Hub establishes a Wi-Fi Direct connection between the device and the hub.

Note: Wi-Fi Calling cannot be used at the same time as AllShare Cast Hub.

## **Connecting AllShare Cast Hub**

To connect your AllShare Cast Hub hardware:

AllShare Cast (with Hub accessory)

This feature functions with an external AllShareCast Hub to fully mirror what is currently displayed on your device to the external TV.



1. Connect the AllShare Cast hub to a power source via the USB Travel Adapter.

**Note:** The status LED begins to blink solid red to indicate it has begun the start up process.

LED Color/Patterns	Description
Red - Solid	Indicates the AllShare Cast Hub is booting or processing.
Red - Blinking	Indicates the AllShare Cast Hub is in standby mode (ready for connection).
Blue - Solid	Indicates the AllShare Cast Hub is ready to be connected with a new device.

- Connect your TV to the AllShare Cast Hub via an HDMI cable (A-to-A cable) as shown above.
- Change the source input on your TV to match the input port used by the incoming HDMI cable.

Note: The television screen should now display an on-screen tutorial showing you how to configure your device's AllShare Cast Hub and device settings.

#### To activate AllShare Cast on your device:

- Press → and then tap Settings →
   More settings → AllShare Cast.
- If not already on, touch and slide the AllShare Cast slider to the right to turn it on ON. The slider color indicates the activation status.

## **Pairing AllShare Cast Hub**

#### To pair your device and Hub for the 1st time:

- Locate the AllShare Hub (dongle) name displayed at the bottom of the TV (showing the tutorial).

  The All Share Hub (dongle) name displayed at the bottom of the TV (showing the tutorial).

  The All Share Hub (dongle) name displayed at the bottom of the TV (showing the tutorial).

  The All Share Hub (dongle) name displayed at the bottom of the TV (showing the tutorial).
  - Ex: Name: Dongle XXXXXX.
- Access your device's AllShare Cast screen and locate the same hub/dongle name in the list.
  - Tap Scan if your AllShare Cast Hub (dongle) does not appear in the list
- Verify your AllShare Cast Hub is on (blinking red LED) and the on-screen tutorial is displaying on the connected TV

Note: The AllShare Cast Hub communicates with your paired device via a Wi-Fi Direct connection.

- 4. For a first time connection:
  - Press the RESET button (located at the rear of the hub) once and only for a second until the LED turns solid BLUE.
  - Quickly tap the hub name entry on your device's AllShare Cast screen.
- Verify (AllShare Cast Hub Communicating) appears at the top of the device's screen.
- Confirm the connection by making sure both your TV and device show the same image/screen and (Wi-Fi Direct Communicating) now displays on the device.

Important! The AllShare Cast Hub is a 1-to-1 connection. If a previous device was paired to the Hub and is still connected to the AllShare Cast Hub, you can not pair a new device until the first connection is stopped.

#### To disconnect your device from the hub:

- Access your device's AllShare Cast screen and locate the current connection.
- 2. Tap the entry and select **End connection**.

#### To reconnect your device again to an existing hub:

 Locate the AllShare Hub (dongle) name displayed at the bottom of the TV (showing the tutorial).

Ex: Name: **Dongle - XXXXXX**.

Important! Verify the LED is not a solid blue. This indicates there is another device currently connected.

- Access your device's AllShare Cast screen and tap the same hub/dongle name in the list.
- Confirm the connection by making sure both your TV and device show the same image/screen.

# AllShare Cast Hub - Troubleshooting Connections

- If this is the first time you are connecting your device to a hub and the connection fails:
  - Press the RESET button for 1 second until it turns solid BLUE.
  - Quickly tap the dongle name from within your device's AllShare cast screen.

Note: This process is similar to initially pairing a Bluetooth device

- If you have already successfully paired another device and you are trying to connect another device:
  - Only one device can be paired and in use at a time with the hub.
  - From the previously connected device's AllShare Cast screen, tap the connection and select End connection.
  - If you can't find the previous device:
    - Press and hold the RESET button (on the back of the hub), for about FOUR seconds until the LED begins to blink RED.
    - Access your new device's AllShare Cast screen and rescan for the existing hub/dongle.
    - Press the **RESET** button on the hub for ONE second until the LED turns **BLUE**.
    - Tap the entry from your device's AllShare Cast screen and confirm connection.

Important! The AllShare Cast Hub is a 1-to-1 connection. If a previous device was paired to the Hub and is still connected to the AllShare Cast Hub, you can not pair a new device until the first connection is stopped.

- I have a new device and the hub is connected but it doesn't show up in my list:
  - Force the hub to disconnect from any previously paired devices:
    - Press and hold the RESET button (on the back of the hub), for about FOUR seconds until the LED begins to blink RED.
    - Access your new device's AllShare Cast screen and rescan for the existing hub/dongle.
    - Press the **RESET** button on the hub for ONE second until the LED turns **BLUE**.
    - Tap the entry from your device's AllShare Cast screen and confirm connection.

# AllShare Cast Hub - Streaming Videos

The hub supports streaming of purchased media content that contains DRM (Digital Rights Management).

Note: You can control the volume level of your playback file being shown on your TV by using your device's Volume buttons. For additional volume, use your TV's volume controls.

#### To stream video content to your Tv via AllShare Cast Hub:

- Connect your AllShare Cast Hub to your TV. For more information, refer to "Connecting AllShare Cast Hub" on page 195.
- Verify your TV is set to the same source as your hub and that you can see the on-screen connection and configuration tutorials.
- 3. On your device, press → and then tap Settings → More settings → AllShare Cast.
- In a single motion touch and slide the AllShare Cast slider to the right to turn it on N. A list of available hubs will appear on the screen.

- Press the RESET button on the back of the hub once (LED turns blue) and tap the dongle entry from your device's list.
  - or -

If reconnecting, verify the hub's LED is blinking red and then tap the dongle entry from your device's list.

- **6.** Verify (AllShare Cast Hub Communicating) appears at the top of the device's screen.
- 7. Verify the previous (Wi-Fi Direct On) now displays (Wi-Fi Direct Communicating).
- 8. To playback a user-created video:
  - From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (Gallery).
  - Locate your video and tap it to begin playback. Your TV now shows the video

- **9.** To playback a DRM purchased video:
  - From the Home screen, tap (Apps) →
     (Gallery). Locate your video and tap it to begin playback.
  - From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (Play Movies). Locate your purchased video and tap it to begin playback.
  - From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (Video Player). Locate your video and tap it to begin playback.

#### T-Mobile TV

T-Mobile TV is an application that allows you to get live TV and Video on Demand.

From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (T-Mobile TV). The T-Mobile Terms and Conditions page displays.

Note: A data plan is required to use this feature. Charges may apply. Please contact your service provider for further details.

Tap Accept if you accept the Terms and Conditions.

- or -

Tap **Exit** to close the application.

Note: T-Mobile TV must be initialized over a cellular network before it can be used. During this initial registration process, any Wi-Fi connections must be disabled.

Tap Disable Wi-Fi if you currently have an active Wi-Fi connection.

- Tap Start Trial to begin a free 30-day trial of the service.
  - or –

Tap **Continue** to keep viewing the free content or **Purchase Options** to buy the paid features.

Tap any of the following categories to begin viewing: Live TV, On Demand, My Media, More Info, Browse, or Live Channels.

#### YouTube

YouTube is a video sharing website on which users can upload and share videos, and view them in MPEG-4 format.

- From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → You (YouTube).
- 2. When the screen loads you can begin searching and viewing posted videos.
- 3. Press → Settings → General → High quality on mobile if you prefer high quality output.

# **Section 9: Applications and Development**

This section contains a description of each application that is available in the Applications Menu, its function, and how to navigate through that particular application. If the application is already described in another section of this user manual, then a cross reference to that particular section is provided.

Tip: To open applications quickly, add the icons of frequentlyused applications to one of the Home screens. For more information, refer to "Customizing the Screens" on page 57.

You can also add an application icon as a Primary Shortcut that will display on all Home screens. If you add an application as a primary shortcut, the application icon will not be displayed in the Applications menu. For more information, refer to "Adding and Removing Primary Shortcuts" on page 61.

# **Applications**

The Applications list provides quick access to all the available applications on the phone.

#### **Access T-Mobile**

This application provides you online access to account information such as your current activity, billing information, service plans, downloads, and other information.

**Note:** Wi-Fi connection must be disabled prior to use, this application requires use of a T-Mobile network connection.

- From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (Access T-Mobile).
- **2.** Scroll to the bottom of the application screen and select one of three available options:
  - My Account provides access to account-specific features such as: Bill Cycle start date, Usage, and Detailed usage information.
  - Billing provides details about your current billing summary.

- Plans & Services provides about both your current plan, other available plans and other related services.
- Other T-Mobile Links provides links to other T-Mobile related information.
- Settings & Support provides access to Settings options (ex: My Downloads, MobileLife, More for Me Settings) and Terms & Condition information.

# **AllShare Play**

This application wirelessly synchronizes your Samsung mobile phone with your TV, streams content and even keeps tabs on who calls or sends text messages with real-time, on-screen monitoring. Samsung's AllShare makes staying connected easy.

Allows users to share their in-device media content with other external devices using DLNA certified™ (Digital Living Network Alliance) Devices. These external devices must also be DLNA-compliant. Wi-Fi capability can be provided to TVs via a digital multimedia streamer.

#### AllShare Definitions:

AllShare

This uses the traditional DLNA technology for sharing multimedia (photos, videos, or music) to your Samsung Smart TV and other DLNA devices.

AllShare Play

This new feature builds on the previous AllShare feature. It includes features such as Web storage integration and social networking integration. This is a Web service that requires using a Samsung account.

AllShare Play/Group Cast

A subset feature of AllShare Play, this allows you to mirror photos and multimedia presentations with other members of your current Wi-Fi group. Users must be on the same Wi-Fi and provide an access code to join the group.

## AllShare Cast (with Hub accessory)

This feature functions with an external AllShareCast Hub to fully mirror what is currently displayed on your device to the external TV.

Important! You must first connect both of your communicating devices to the same Wi-Fi and be using an active/registered Samsung account prior to using this application.

For more information, refer to "Wi-Fi settings" on page 264.

For more information, refer to "Creating a Samsung Account" on page 20.

Important! The Samsung account manages the access information (username/password) to several applications, such as AllShare Play.

From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (AllShare Play).

If prompted, read the on-screen message about network charges and tap Yes to continue and return to the main AllShare Play screen.

**Note:** If the main screen still shows a Sign in box, close the application and restart it.

3. Tap Start and follow the on-screen prompts.

For more information, refer to "AllShare Play" on page 189.

#### Amazon

This mobile application provides a user with access to the online Amazon website.

- 1. From the Home screen, tap (Applications) → (Amazon).
- **2.** Log in to the site and follow the on-screen instructions.

#### **Calculator**

Using this feature allows you to use your device as a calculator. The calculator provides the basic arithmetic functions; addition, subtraction, multiplication, and division. You can also use this as a scientific calculator.

- From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (Calculator).
- 2. Enter the first number using the numeric keys.
- Enter the operation for your calculation by tapping the Plus, Minus, Multiplication, or Division key.
- 4. Enter the next number.
- 5. To view the result, tap the = (equals) key.
- 6. Repeat steps 1 to 4 as many times as required.

Note: Place the screen in Landscape mode to reveal additional scientific functions.

#### Calendar

With this feature, you can consult the calendar by day, week, or month, create events, and set an alarm to act as a reminder. Google Calendar is built into the phone and synchronizes both new and existing entries between your phone and your online Google account.

Important! You should previously add an account (Facebook, Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync, or Google) prior to using the Calendar.

From the Home screen, tap (Applications) → (Calendar).

For more information, refer to "Calendar" on page 259.

Applications and Development

#### Camera

Use your 8.0 megapixel camera feature to produce photos in a JPEG format. The Camcorder shoots High Definition video in an MP4 format.

**Note:** A microSD card is no longer necessary before you take pictures or shoot video.

It is recommended that you confirm your default storage location for images and videos.

■ From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (Camera).

For more information, refer to "Using the Camera" on page 150.

#### **ChatON**

Provides a global mobile communication service where you can chat with more than 2 buddies via a group chat, In this service you can send pictures, videos, animation messages (Scribbles), audio, Contacts, Calendar entries, and Location information. Create special animated messages for your friends using handwritten messages, text, photos, background images and music.

- From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (ChatON).
- Log in to the service and follow the on-screen instructions.

For more information, visit: <a href="https://web.samsungchaton.com">https://web.samsungchaton.com</a>.
For more information, refer to "ChatON" on page 145.

#### Clock

Here you can set an Alarm, configure and view the World clock, use a Stopwatch, set a Timer, or use a Desk Clock. The applications display in a tabular format and quickly accessed with the touch of a finger.

From the Home screen, tap  $(Apps) \rightarrow (Clock)$ .

For more information, refer to "Clock" on page 261.

#### **Contacts**

The default storage location for saving phone numbers to your Contacts List is your phone's built-in memory.

■ From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (Contacts).

For more information, refer to "Contacts List" on page 103.

#### **Downloads**

Provides quick access to tabs containing a list of your current downloaded files (Internet and Other).

- From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (Downloads).
- Tap an available file category tab (Internet downloads or Other downloads) and select the desired file.

# **Dropbox**

Works to provide access to your desktop files directly from your device. This applications allows you to bring your files with you when you're on the go, edit files in your Dropbox from your device, upload photos and videos to Dropbox, and share your selected files freely with family and friends.

The in-device application works in conjunction with a partner program placed on a target computer using an active Internet connection.

Dropbox creates a folder that automatically synchronizes its contents across all of your connected devices on your account. Update a file to your Dropbox on your computer, and its automatically updated to the same folder on your other devices.

#### **Download the Desktop application**

- Use your computer's browser to navigate to: http://www.dropbox.com/.
- Follow the on-screen setup and installation instructions on your target computer containing the desired files.

Important! The computer application must be installed on the computer containing the desired files. This computer must have an active Internet connection.

Note: It might be necessary to configure your router's firewall settings to allow this application to gain access to the Internet.

#### **Accessing Dropbox on your Device**

- From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (Dropbox) → Start.
- Tap I'm already a Dropbox user, enter your current account credentials, and tap Log in.
  - or —

Tap I'm new to Dropbox and follow the on-screen instructions to register for a new account.

- Follow the on-screen instructions.
- Initially, you will need to configure your Camera Upload parameters. Choose from Wi-Fi only or Wi-Fi or data plan.
  - Tap Turn on after making your selection.

Caution! Enabling this feature can incur data charges (depending on your plan) if the Wi-FI or data plan is selected.

- 5. Tap (Access Dropbox) at the top of the application window to access the files and folders you area currently sharing from your computer.
- Tap an item to open it.

- Touch and hold an on-screen item to choose from additional options:
  - **Share** via applications such as: Copy link, Bluetooth, ChatON, Email, Flipboard, Gmail, Google+, Messaging, S Memo, or Wi-Fi Direct.
  - Favorite to tag an image as a favorite.
  - Delete to erase the current file.
  - Rename to rename the current file.
  - Export to transfer the current file to another location via: Save to SD card, Bluetooth, ChatON, Email, Flipboard, Gmail, Google+, Group Cast, Messaging, Picasa, S Memo, Wi-Fi Direct. or Gallery.
- 8. Tap (Up a Directory Level) at the top of the application window to navigate up a single level with every tap.
- 9. Tap \( \frac{1}{2} \) (Tag as Favorite) at the top of the application window to assign favorite files.
- (Search) at the top of the application window to search for files located in your Dropbox account.

## Manually uploading a Picture to Dropbox

- 1. From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (Camera).
- After the image is taken, tap the Image Viewer box at the bottom right. This previews the current image.
- Tap the image to reveal the image options at the top of the screen.
- (Dropbox) select a folder location and tap Upload.

Note: If your share folder is located on your computer, you will momentarily receive an on-screen popup notifying you that a new image was uploaded to your shared Dropbox folder.

#### **Email**

Email enables you to review and create email using most email services. The device alerts you when you receive an email message.

From the Home screen, tap  $(Apps) \rightarrow (0)$ (Email).





For more information, refer to "Using Email" on page 133.

# **Flipboard**

This application creates a personalized digital magazine out of everything being shared with you. Access news stories, personal feeds and other related material. Flip through your Facebook newsfeed, tweets from your Twitter account, photos from friends and much more.

- From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (Flipboard).
- Tap Get started, select some on-screen categories and tap Done to create a new profile.

- or -

Tap **Sign In** to log into your previously created profile.

Follow the on-screen instructions.

# **Gallery**

The Gallery is where you view photos and play back videos. For photos, you can also perform basic editing tasks, view a slideshow, set photos as wallpaper or caller image, and share as a picture message.

■ From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (Gallery).

For more information, refer to "The Gallery" on page 171.

#### **Game Hub**

Provides a premium one-stop service center that let's you play, connect and share games on compatible Samsung Android devices. Game Hub comes pre-packaged with some of the most popular social and premium HD games that have been specially customized to play on your device.

- From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (Game Hub).
- 2. Read the on-screen disclaimer and tap Confirm.
- Follow the on-screen instructions and navigate to your favorite games and services.

#### **Gmail**

Google Mail (Gmail) is a web-based email service. Gmail is configured when you first set up your phone. Depending on your synchronization settings, Gmail can automatically synchronize with your Gmail account on the web.

■ From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (Gmail).

For more information, refer to "Using Google Mail" on page 143.

# Google +

Google+ makes messaging and sharing with your friends a lot easier.

- Sign on to your Google account. For more information, refer to "Creating a New Google Account" on page 18.
- 2. From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (Google+).

For more information, refer to "Google +" on page 147.

## Internet

Open the browser to start surfing the web. The browser is fully optimized and comes with advanced functionality to enhance the Internet browsing feature on your phone.

■ From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (Internet).

For more information, refer to "Internet" on page 238.

## Kies air

Kies air allows you to sync your Windows PC wirelessly with your phone provided they are both on the same Wi-Fi network. You can view and share call logs, videos, photos, music, bookmarks, ringtones, and even send SMS messages from your PC.

■ From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (Kies air).

For more information, refer to "Kies Air" on page 252.

## Latitude

Google Latitude allows you and your friends share locations and status messages with each other. It also lets you send instant messages and emails, make phone calls, and get directions to your friends' locations.

Important! You must sign in to your Google account, enable
Wi-Fi, and enable the Location feature before you
can use this application. For more information,
refer to "Wi-Fi settings" on page 264.

**Note:** Although you do not have to enable location services in order to use Latitude, it is recommended for best accuracy.



Important! For best results, it is recommended that you enable all of your location services. For more information, refer to "Location Services" on page 293.

- Tap Wi-Fi Disabled Click to enable connection to navigate to the Wi-Fi Settings menu where you can turn on Wi-Fi if it is not already enabled.
   For more information, refer to "Wi-Fi" on page 253.
- If prompted with the Improve My Location screen, tap Settings to configure the necessary settings or Skip to continue on without making a change.
- **4.** Tap **MAP VIEW** to return to the main application.

# **Sharing your Location with Friends**

- From the map view, if not already displaying the
  Latitude icon at the top tight, tap the bottom-right
  arrow from (Join Latitude) to
  display your Latitude friends. At first, only your name is
  displayed.
- 2. From the bottom of the Latitude map screen, tap FRIENDS LIST → (Add friends).
  - Tap (Add friends).

— or —

- 3. Tap Select from Contacts or Add via email address.
- **4.** Tap a contact or enter an email address, then tap **Add friends**.
- 5. Tap Yes at the Send sharing requests prompt.

Your friend will receive an email or text message with your location marked on a map. They will also receive instructions on how to view your location from the web or use Latitude on their phone or tablet provided it is available. Once they acknowledge your request, their location will display on your device. They can share their location from their computer, phone, or tablet. For more information, go to <a href="http://www.google.com/latitude.">http://www.google.com/latitude.</a>

6. To view the map, tap MAP VIEW.

# **Latitude Options**

- From the Latitude map screen ( Latitude is shown in the upper-left) display, select either:
  - FRIENDS LIST: allows you to access and edit your current Freinds list.
  - or -

From the Latitude map, press and select one of the following:

- Clear Map: allows you to remove all markings and layers from the map.
- Search: allows you to search for a place of interest.

- Directions: displays navigation directions to a location from a starting point.
- Layers: allows you to switch map views:
  - Traffic: (available only in selected areas) Real-time traffic conditions are displayed over roads as color-coded lines. Each color represents how fast the traffic is moving.
  - Satellite: Maps uses the same satellite data as Google Earth.
     Satellite images are not real-time. Google Earth acquires the best imagery available, most of which is approximately one to three years old.
  - Terrain: combines a topographical view of the area's terrain with the current map location.
  - Transit Lines: displays the overlapping transit lines on your map.
  - Latitude: allows you to see your friend's locations and share your location with them.
- My Maps: displays a list of your preferred maps.
- Bicycling: displays the overlapping cycling trails on your map.
- Wikipedia: displays any Wikipedia markers and info on your map.

- **Settings**: allows you to select the following additional options:
  - Display: allows you to enable/disable the Zoom Buttons and Scale Bar.
  - Cache: allows you to set options to pre-fetch map tiles when not using Wi-Fi and to clear the cache that holds the map tiles.
  - Location Settings: lets you access and configure the location settings.
  - Labs: this is a testing ground for experimental features that aren't ready for primetime. They may change, break or disappear at any time. Click on a Lab to enable or disable it.
  - What's New: provides access to the Play Store from where you
    can update the application manually.
  - About: displays general information about Google maps such as Version, Platform, Locale, Total data sent, Total data received, Free memory, etc.
  - Feedback: allows you to provide application feedback.
  - Terms, Privacy & Notices: displays the Terms and Conditions, Privacy Policy, or Legal Notices information. Select the desired information from the pop-up menu.
- **Help**: provides help information.

#### Local

Local (formerly known as Google Places) displays company logos on a layer of Google Maps. When viewing an area you can quickly locate a business or person, find out more information about the business, see coupons, public responses, and more.

- From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (Local).
- Tap (Search) and then use the Search Maps field to manually enter a desired place or choose from among the various categories. Matches are filtered by those closest to your current location.
- Locate and tap one of the listed places (Restaurants, Cafes, Bars, Attractions, [user added searches], RECOMMENDATIONS, or IN THIS AREA a list of places within this category displays.
- **4.** Tap the Maps icon to launch the related maps feature.
- Fress and then tap Add a search. The functions adds additional search shortcuts to the places screen.

# **Maps**

Google Maps allow you to track your current location, view real-time traffic issues, and view detailed destination directions. There is also a search tool included to help you locate places of interest or a specific address. You can view locations on a vector or aerial map, or you can view locations at the street level.

Important! Before using Google Maps you must have an active data (3G/4G) or Wi-Fi connection. The Maps application does not cover every country or city.

From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (Maps).

Important! For best results, it is recommended that you enable all of your location services. For more information, refer to "Location Services" on page 293.

# **Enabling a Location source**

Before you use Google Maps and find your location or search for places of interest, you must enable a location source. To enable the location source you must enable the wireless network, or enable the GPS satellites.

Important! The more location determining functions are enabled, the more accurate the determination will be of your position.

- Press → and then tap Settings → Location services.
- Tap Use wireless networks allows apps to use data from sources such as Wi-Fi and mobile networks to provide a better approximation of your current location.
- 3. Tap Use GPS satellites to enable the GPS satellite.

Tip: When using Google Maps you can turn on Location and Google search. Enabling this feature allows you to locate places of interest at the street-level. However, this also requires a clear view of the sky and uses more battery power.

## **Opening Maps**

- From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (Maps).
- Tap the upper-right My location button to find your location on the map with a blinking blue dot.
- 3. Locate the bottom row of the buttons to access additional options:
  - Search: allows you to search for a place of interest.
  - Directions: displays navigation directions to a location from a starting point.
  - Local: provides access to the places menu where you can
    quickly locate a business or person, find out more information
    about a business, see coupons, public responses, and more
    (Local). Locate and tap one of the listed places (Restaurants,
    Cafes, Bars, Attractions, or select from available categories
    such as Entertainment, ATMs, Gas stations, Hotels, Post office,
    or Taxi.)
  - Layers: allows you to switch map views:
    - Traffic: (available only in selected areas) Real-time traffic conditions are displayed over roads as color-coded lines. Each color represents how fast the traffic is moving.

- Satellite: Maps uses the same satellite data as Google Earth.
   Satellite images are not real-time. Google Earth acquires the best imagery available, most of which is approximately one to three years old.
- Terrain: combines a topographical view of the area's terrain with the current map location.
- Transit Lines: displays the overlapping transit lines on your map.
- Latitude: allows you to see your friend's locations and share your location with them.
- My Maps: displays a list of your preferred maps.
- Bicycling: displays the overlapping cycling trails on your map.
- Wikipedia: displays any Wikipedia markers and info on your map.
- **4.** Press **and** select one of the following options:
  - Clear Map: allows you to remove all markings and layers from the map.
  - **Settings**: allows you to select the following additional options:
  - Display: allows you to enable/disable the Zoom Buttons and Scale Bar.

- Cache: allows you to set options to pre-fetch map tiles when not using Wi-Fi and to clear the cache that holds the map tiles.
- Location Settings: lets you access and configure the location settings.
- Labs: this is a testing ground for experimental features that aren't ready for primetime. They may change, break or disappear at any time. Click on a Lab to enable or disable it.
- What's New: provides access to the Play Store from where you can update the application manually.
- About: displays general information about Google maps such as Version, Platform, Locale, Total data sent, Total data received, Free memory, etc.
- Feedback: allows you to provide application feedback.
- Terms, Privacy & Notices: displays the Terms and Conditions, Privacy Policy, or Legal Notices information. Select the desired information from the pop-up menu.
- **Help**: provides help information.

#### **Media Hub**

From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (Media Hub).

For more information, refer to "Media Hub" on page 175.

# Messaging

This application allows you to use the Short Message Service (SMS) to send and receive short text messages to and from other mobile phones.

You can also use the Multi Media Service (MMS) to create multimedia messages to send and receive from other mobile phones.

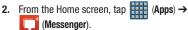
■ From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (Messaging).

For more information, refer to "Messages" on page 123.

# Messenger

Messenger allows you to bring groups of friends together into a simple group conversation. When you get a new conversation in Messenger, Google+ sends an update to your phone.

 Sign on to your Google account. For more information, refer to "Creating a New Google Account" on page 18.



\_\_\_\_\_

From the Google+ application, select **Messenger**.

For more information, refer to "Messenger" on page 148.

# **Mobile HotSpot**

- or -

Provides access to the Tethering and portable HotSpot menu where you can use either the USB tethering or portable HotSpot functionality.

- 1. From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (Mobile HotSpot).
- 2. Activate the desired connection method.

For more information see either "USB Tethering" on page 256 or "Mobile HotSpot" on page 257.

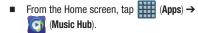
#### **More Services**

Provides access to additional Samsung Apps and services. Works in conjunction with the Samsung Apps feature.

- From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (More Services).
- 2. Follow the on-screen instructions.

#### **Music Hub**

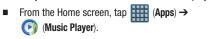
Samsung Music Hub makes your device a personal music manager and lets you access, buy, and download millions of music tracks.



For more information, refer to "Music Hub" on page 188.

# **Music Player**

This application allows you to play music files that you have stored on your microSD card. You can also create playlists.



For more information, refer to "Music Player" on page 184.

# My files

This application allows you to manage your sounds, images, videos, bluetooth files, Android files, and other memory card data in one convenient location. This application allows you to launch a file if the associated application is already on your phone (ex: MP4).

■ From the Home screen, tap (Applications) → (My files).

**Note:** Navigation in this viewer works on a hierarchy structure with folders, subfolders, etc.

Note: The application lets you view supported image files and text files on both your internal storage and microSD card.

# **Opening and Navigating within Files**

DCIM is the default location for pictures or video taken by the device. These files are actually stored in the DCIM folder location.

- From the Home screen, tap (Applications) → (My files).
- Tap a folder and scroll down or up until you locate your selected file.
  - Home tab allows you to back up to the root directory.
  - **Up tab** allows you to back up into a higher directory.
  - Press and then tap View by to change the way the files are displayed on-screen. Choose from: List, List and details, or Thumbnail.
  - Press for these additional options: Create folder, Delete, Search, View by, Sort by, Share via, Move, Copy, Rename, and Settings.
- **3.** Once you have located your file, tap the file name to launch the associated application.

# **Navigation**

Google Maps Navigation (Beta) is an internet-connected turn-by-turn, GPS navigation system with voice guidance.

**Caution!** Traffic data is not real-time and directions may be wrong, dangerous, prohibited, or involve ferries.

**Important!** To receive better GPS signals, avoid using your device in the following conditions:

- inside a building or between buildings
- in a tunnel or underground passage
- in poor weather
- around high-voltage or electromagnetic fields
- in a vehicle with tinted windows
- From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (Navigation).
- Read the on-screen disclaimer regarding the current release status of the Navigation app and tap Accept.

# **Enabling GPS Location**

- Press → and then tap Settings → Location services.
- Tap Use wireless networks allows apps to use data from sources such as Wi-Fi and mobile networks to provide a better approximation of your current location.
- 3. Tap Use GPS satellites to enable the GPS satellite.

Tip: When using Google Maps you can turn on Location and Google search. Enabling this feature allows you to locate places of interest at the street-level. However, this also requires a clear view of the sky and uses more battery power.

# **Navigation options**

From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (Navigation). The navigation application can be configured from the main screen.

- If prompted, read the on-screen disclaimer and tap Accept.
- 3. Choose from the following on-screen options:
  - Driving/Walking : tap to configure the method of travel.
     Selection of Walking would negate the need to track traffic jams and obstructions.
    - Driving mode enables the Settings feature: allows you to configure your Route options such as: Avoid highways or Avoid tolls.
  - **Speak Destination**: allows you to use the voice recognition feature to search for matching locations in your area.
  - Type Destination: allows you to manually enter a destination address (via the on-screen keypad).
  - Go Home: allows you to return to a designated "Home" location.
    - When prompted initially to setup a home address, enter the location into the **Enter an address** field and tap Save.

• Maps: enables the on-screen real-time map functionality.

# **Navigation Map options**

Once on the map screen, you can access the following features:

- Destination: returns you to the previous Navigation options screen.
- Search by voice: Speak your destination instead of typing.
- Layers: allows you to switch map views:
  - Traffic view: (available only in selected areas) Real-time traffic conditions are displayed over roads as color-coded lines. Each color represents how fast the traffic is moving.
  - Satellite: Maps uses the same satellite data as Google Earth.
     Satellite images are not real-time. Google Earth acquires the best imagery available, most of which is approximately one to three years old.
  - Parking: displays parking information relative to your current location.
  - Gas Stations: displays gas station location relative to your current location.
  - ATMs & banks: displays ATM and Bank locations relative to your current location.

 Restaurants: displays restaurant and eatery locations relative to your current location.

While on the map screen, press to access additional options:

- Set destination: returns you to the navigation options screen where you can access a destination by either Speaking, Typing, or selecting from a Contacts entry or Starred Place.
- Search: manually search for a destination address, place, name of business, or even a type of business.
- Layers: allows you to switch map views. See previous description.
- Settings: provides access to both Power settings (Screen dimming) and Information (Terms, privacy & notices).
- Exit navigation: terminates the application.
- Help: provides on-screen help.

#### **Phone**

This application provides the ability to make or answering calls, access the Contacts list, which is used to store contact information.

From the Home screen, tap (Phone).

For more information, refer to "Call Functions and Contacts List" on page 69.

# **Play Books**

Formerly known as Google Books, this application allows you to read over 3 million ebooks on the go.

Build your ebooks library in the cloud with Play Books: jump right into a bestseller or select from nearly 3 million free ebooks. Personalize the reader to your liking, pick up reading where you left off on your phone or computer, and settle down with a great book on your Android phone!

- From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (Play Books).
- If prompted, tap Turn sync on. This synchronizes your books you have previously selected between your Books account and your device.

- **3.** Tap to begin searching for both free and paid ebooks.
- Follow the on-screen prompts to download the ebook to your device.

# **Play Movies**

This application allows you to connect to the Play Store, download a movie and then watch it instantly.

Learn more about Google Play Movies at: http://play.google.com/about/movies.

card displays in the Video list.

■ From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (Play Movies). A list of videos sorted on the SD

For more information, refer to "Play Movies" on page 178.

# **Play Music**

Also known as Google Music, allows you to browse, shop, and playback songs purchased from the Play Store. The music you choose is automatically stored in your Google Music library and instantly ready to play or download.

■ From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (Play Music).

For more information, refer to "Play Music" on page 178.

# **Play Store**

Formerly known as the "Android Market", this application provides access to downloadable applications and games to install on your phone. The Play Store also allows you to provide feedback and comments about an application, or flag an application that might be incompatible with your phone.

Before using the Play Store, you must have a Google Account.

# Accessing the Play Store

- From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (Play Store).
- If not already logged in with your Google account, tap Next.

- 3. Tap **Existing** and enter your Google account information.
- 4. Tap Accept to agree to the Play Store terms of service.

For more information, refer to "Downloading a New Google Application" on page 224.

# **Downloading a New Google Application**

To download a new application, you will need to use your Google account to sign in to the Play Store. The home page provides several ways to find applications. The home page features applications and includes a list of item applications by category, a list of games, a link to search, and a link to My apps.

- From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (Play Store).
- 2. Browse through the categories, find an application you're interested in, and tap the name.
- 3. Read the application descriptions.

Important! If the selected application requires access to data or control of a function on your device, the Play Store displays the information the application will access.

Tap **0K** if you agree to the conditions of the application. Once you tap **0K** on this screen you are responsible for using this application on the device and the amount of data it uses. Use this feature with caution.

#### Tap Install → Accept & download.

Note: Use caution with applications which request access to any personal data, functions, or significant amounts of data usage times.

- If prompted, follow the on-screen instructions to pay for the application.
- 6. Check the progress of the current download by opening the Notifications panel. The content download icon appears in the notification area of the status bar

 On the main Play Store screen, press and then tap My Apps, tap an installed application in the list, and then tap Open.

Tip: The newly downloaded applications display in the applications list and are shown in alphabetical order if the View Type is set to Alphabetical grid or Alphabetical list, or at the end of the list if View type is set to Customizable grid.

Note: A data plan is required to use this feature. Charges may apply. Please contact your service provider for further details.

# **Launching an Installed Google Application**

- 1. From the Home screen, tap (Apps).
- Tap the newly installed application. This application is typically located on the last Applications page.

#### **Unknown sources**

This feature can be used for Android application development. The feature allows developers to install non-Play Store applications.

Press → □ and then tap Settings → Security and lock screen → Unknown sources.
Unknown sources displays a check mark to indicate it is active.

Note: If Unknown sources is disabled, those applications without a certificate will not be allowed to download to your device.

# Manage applications

This feature allows you to manage and remove installed applications. You can also view the amount of memory or resources used as well as the remaining memory and resources for each of the applications on your device and clear the data, cache, or defaults.

■ Press → □ and then tap Settings → Application manager.

## Clearing application cache and data

- Press → □ and then tap Settings → Application manager.
- 2. Tap an application in which to clear the cache or data.
- Tap Force stop, Uninstall, Clear data, Clear cache, or Clear defaults.

## **Uninstalling third-party applications**

You can uninstall any application you downloaded and installed from the Play Store.

- Press → and then tap Settings → Application manager → All.
- 2. Tap the third-party application, and from the **Application info** screen, tap **Uninstall**.

## **S Memo**

The S Memo application allows you to create memos using the keypad, your finger, or both. You can add images, voice recordings, and text all in one place.

# **Creating a New Memo**

- From the Home screen, tap (Apps) →
   (S Memo). The S Memo screen is displayed.
- Tap an existing Memo to open it then tap the screen to enter edit mode.

– or –

Tap +1 to start a new memo in text mode with the keypad displayed or tap +2 to start a new memo in drawing mode using your finger or a compatible on-screen writing tool. You can change back and forth in a memo to add text with the keypad and the pen.



The icons that you see displayed on the screen are described in the following table:

- Saves the memo.
- Changes the view mode.
- Allows you to add free-format drawing.

- Displays the keypad to you can add text.
- Eraser tool allows you to erase marks and drawings.
- Undo the last action.
- Redo the last action that was undone.
- Make a voice recording to add to the memo.
- Hide the secondary toolbar.
- Show the secondary toolbar.
- Add an additional page to the memo.
- 3. Press i to access the following options:

Note: Depending on whether you have saved the memo, are in keypad mode, or in handwriting mode, the options will appear differently. The following is a list of the options you may see.

• Rename: allows you to change the current memo title.

- Share via: allows you to share your memo using Group Cast, ChatON, Dropbox, Flipboard, Picasa, Google+, Bluetooth, Wi-Fi Direct, Messaging, Gmail, or Email.
- Handwriting-to-text: allows you to transcribe handwriting into text.
- **Export**: allows you to save the memo to your Gallery or as a PDF.
- Sync: allows you to sync the current memo with either Google Docs or Evernote.
- Save as: allows you to save the memo with a different name.
- Add picture: allows you to add an image to the current memo.
   Choose from: Picture, Take picture, Clip Art, Clipboard, or Map.
- Add tag: allows you to set tags to add in searches.
- Add as favorite: allows you to tag the current memo as a favorite.
- Change background: allows you to set the background for your memo. Swipe the screen to the left or right to select a background and then tap Done.
- Link to Calendar: allows you to link the memo to your Calendar.
- Lock: allows you to lock an email by using a PIN number.

- **Set as**: allows you to set a memo as a contact icon, Home screen wallpaper, or Lock screen wallpaper.
- Print: allows you to print the screen or web page on a Samsung printer using Wi-Fi.

When you are finished creating your memo, tap **Save** on the top menu bar.

# **S** Suggest

Provides on-screen recommendations for applications that are specifically supported and made for use on your device.

Note: Access to this feature requires that you already be logged in to your Samsung account application. For more information, refer to "Creating a Samsung Account" on page 20.

- 1. From the Home screen, tap (Apps) = (S Suggest).
- 2. Read the terms and conditions.
- 3. Place a check mark in the Agree field then tap Agree.
- Select an application from one of the available categories (Picks, Categories, Games, Friends, and Info).

Follow the on-screen download and installation instructions.

# **S Voice**

Launches your phone's built-in voice recognition system that allows you to initiate several common tasks without having to touch the phone. Features include: Call, Text, Navigate, Play music, Memo, and Driving mode.

■ From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (S Voice).

For more information, refer to "Using S Voice" on page 78.

# **Samsung Apps**

Allows you to easily download an abundance of applications to your device. This includes games, news, reference, social networking, navigation, and more. Samsung Apps makes your Smartphone smarter.

Note: Access to this feature requires that you already be logged in to your Samsung account application. For more information, refer to "Creating a Samsung Account" on page 20.

- From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (Samsung Apps).
- If prompted, read the on-screen disclaimer and agree to the information.
- 3. Follow the on-screen instructions.

#### Search

Use Google Search to search the Web.

■ From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (Search) and enter the search text.

Tap on the Google Search bar and say the search information.

# **Settings**

This icon navigates to the sound and phone settings for your phone. It includes such settings as: display, security, memory, and any extra settings associated with your phone.

■ From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (Settings).

- or -

Press → 📻 and then tap **Settings**.

For more information, refer to "Changing Your Settings" on page 264.

# **T-Mobile Name ID**

Allows you to modify the on-screen Caller ID information. Name ID identifies unknown callers by Name, City, and State.

From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (T-Mobile Name ID).

Choose an on-screen option.

#### **T-Mobile TV**

T-Mobile TV is an application that allows you to get live TV and Video on Demand.

■ From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (T-Mobile TV).

For more information, refer to "T-Mobile TV" on page 200.

#### **TecTiles**

Although not installed by default, this application works with TecTiles to automatically change settings, launch selected applications, or many other useful features.

Note: TecTiles are sold separately.

You can scan a TecTile by turning on your device, enabling NFC, and then tapping the back of your device to the TecTile. For more information, refer to "Near Field Communication" on page 271.

Important! The NFC feature must be enabled prior to using TecTiles.

#### Turning on the NFC feature:

■ From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → Settings → More settings → NFC.

## Installing the TecTile application:

 Tap the back of the device to a TecTile to automatically be directed to the Play Store's TecTile application and select **Download**. If you do not already have it, follow the on-screen instructions to download it from the Play Store.

- or -

Navigate to the Play Store, search for and install the **TecTile** application.

2. Verify the TecTile app ( ) appears within the Applications screen.



# **Programming your TecTile**

- 1. Ensure NFC feature is on and the TecTile app is loaded to your device.
- 2. Launch the TecTile application ( 1 ).



- 3. Read the on-screen information and tap **OK**.
- 4. Select the TecTile type and the action. Choose from:
  - Settings & Apps: creates a TecTile that will change device settings or launch an application. Choose from Change Phone Settings, Launch an App, Join a Wi-Fi Network, or Show a Message.
  - Phone & Text: creates a TecTile that will either call or text a designated recipient. The outgoing text message can also be pre-programmed into the TecTile. Choose from Make a Call. Send a Text Message, Share a Contact, or Start a Google Talk Conversation.
  - Location & Web: creates a TecTile that shares either a Web. page or address, or checks you in on a social network application. Choose from Show an Address or Location, Foursquare Check In, Facebook Check In, or Open a Web Page.

- Social: creates a TecTile that updates your social network.
   Choose from Update Facebook Status, Facebook Like, Tweet a Status, Follow a Twitter User, Connect on Linkedln.
- 5. Follow the on-screen programming instructions.
- Once you have configured and programmed your TecTile action, hold the device over your TecTile to upload the new programming information.
- 7. Place the TecTile in a convenient location.

Note: TecTiles do not work on metal surfaces.

For more information, visit us at: www.samsung.com/us/tectile.

#### To program your TecTile to send a text message:

- From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (TecTile).
- 2. Select Phone & Text → Send Text Message.
- Fill in the Recipient's Number and Recipient's Name fields with your contact information.
  - This is used as the To address for the new outgoing text message that is sent when a user swipes their device over the TecTile.
- 4. Enter a text message into the Message Content field.

- For example, if you wanted your child to send you a text message when they get home, the TecTile would be programmed to send you a new text message to your cell number with the message string "I'm Home".
- 5. Tap Next.
- Place the device over the TecTile to program the action into the TecTile.
- Confirm the TecTile is functioning properly and place it on its new location.

#### To program your TecTile to join you to a Wi-Fi network:

- 1. From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (TecTile).
- Select Settings & Apps → Join a WiFi Network.
- 3. Tap (Connect to Wi-Fi) to locate and connect to an available Wi-Fi.
  - or -

Enter the SSID information (name of the Wi-Fi).

- **4.** Select the Network security and enter your password.
- 5. Tap Next.

- Place the device over the TecTile to program the action into the TecTile.
- Confirm the TecTile is functioning properly and place it on its new location.

## Talk

You can instant message with Google Talk. Google Talk allows you to communicate with other people who are also connected with Google Talk on the phone or on the web.

■ From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → talk (Talk).

For more information, refer to "Google Talk" on page 145.

# Task Manager

Sometimes your phone might seem to slow down over time, and the biggest reason for this are background applications. These are applications that were not properly closed or shutdown and are still active but minimized. The Task Manager not only lets you see which of these applications are still active in the background but also easily lets you choose which applications are left running and which are closed.

# **Shutting Down Applications**

- **1.** Press and hold then tap **Task manager**. This screen contains the following tabs:
  - Active applications display those currently active applications running on your phone.
  - Downloaded displays any installed packages or applications from the Play Store that are taking up memory space. Tap Uninstall to remove them from your phone.
  - RAM, displays the amount of current RAM (Random Access Memory) currently being used and allow you to Clear memory.
  - Storage displays a visual graph indicating the available and used space within the System storage location or SD card location.
  - Help provides additional battery saving techniques.

From the Active applications tab, tap End to close selected applications or tap End all to close all background running applications.

# Video Player

The Video player application plays video files stored on your microSD card.

■ From the Home screen, tap (Applications) → (Video Player).

For more information, refer to "Using the Video Player" on page 171.

#### **Visual Voicemail**

Visual Voicemail enables users to view a list of people who left a voicemail message, and listen to the any message they want without being limited to chronological order.

■ From the Home screen, tap (Applications) → (Visual Voicemail).

For more information, refer to "Visual Voicemail" on page 23.

## **Voice Recorder**

The Voice Recorder allows you to record an audio file up to one minute long and then immediately send it as a message.

- From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (Volume Recorder).
- 2. Tap (Record) to record an audio file.
- Tap (Stop) to stop recording. The file automatically saves to the Voice list.
- **4.** From the Recorded files page, press and then select one of the following:
  - Share via and select a method in which to share this audio file.
     Selections are: Bluetooth, Dropbox, Email, Gmail, Group Cast, Messaging, or Wi-Fi Direct. Refer to each specific section, depending on the method you selected to send this voice recording.
  - **Delete**: allows you to delete 1 or more voice recordings. Tap the recordings to delete and tap **Delete**.
  - Rename: allows you to rename your recordings.

- **Settings**: the following settings are available:
  - Storage: allows you to choose where your recordings will be saved. Select between Phone or memory card.
  - Default name: allows you to choose the name prefix for your recordings. For example, if your Default name is Voice, your recordings would be named Voice 001, Voice 002, Voice 003, etc.
  - Recording quality: allows you to set the recording quality to High or Normal.
  - Limit for MMS: allows you to select On or Off. If you Limit for MMS by selecting On, you will be assured that the recording can be sent in a message.

#### **VPN Client**

This is a full-featured VPN Client that provides support for the latest IPSec VPN standards and provides interoperability with support for all major VPN Gateways.

- From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (VPN CLient).
- Follow the on-screen instructions to configure the VPN Client.

#### **YouTube**

YouTube is a video sharing website on which users can upload and share videos, and view them in MPEG-4 format.

- 1. From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → You (YouTube).
- 2. When the screen loads you can begin searching and viewing posted videos.

#### To configure YouTube Settings:

- Press and then tap Settings and configure the following parameters:
  - General
    - High quality on mobile, when enabled, allows you to start all videos in high quality mode while you are connected to a mobile network
    - Caption font size allows you to set the font size used by onscreen captions. Choose from: Small, Medium, Large, or Huge.
    - Uploads specifies network preferences for uploads.

#### Search

- Clear search history allows you to clear previous YouTube searches from showing up in the YouTube search box.
- SafeSearch filtering allows you to configure block settings for videos containing restricted content. This option blocks these videos from appearing within your search results. Choose from: Don't filter, Moderate, or Strict blocking.

#### About

- Help provides answers to most YouTube questions.
- Feedback allows you to provide user feedback to YouTube.
- Google Mobile Terms of Service
- YouTube Terms of Service
- Google Mobile Privacy Policy
- YouTube Privacy Policy
- Open source licenses
- App version displays the software version for the current YouTube application.

## To watch a high quality video:

■ Press and then tap Settings → General → High quality on mobile.

# **Section 10: Connections**

Your phone is equipped with features that allow you to quickly connect to the web.

#### Internet

Your device is equipped with a Google browser to navigate the mobile web. This section explains how to navigate the browser and use the basic features.

# Accessing the Internet

#### To access the Browser:

■ From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (Internet).

Note: You must disable your Wi-Fi connection if you wish to view the web2go<sup>®</sup> home page (http://home.web2qo.com/).

# **Navigating with the Browser**

- 1. Tap an entry to select an item.
- **2.** Sweep the screen with your finger in an up or down motion to scroll through a website.
- 3. To return to a previous page, tap
- 4. To move forward to a web page, tap

# **Browser Options**

- From the top of the browser screen, select one of the available options:
  - **Navigation**: use the forward and back buttons to navigate through your browsing activity.
  - Refresh: reloads the current page.
  - Bookmarks: provides access to the Bookmarks screen.
  - Windows: displays a list of the windows you have open.
  - or –

From the home page, press to access the following options:

- **New window**: launches a new browser window. By default, this screen shows the web2go home page.
- Add bookmark: allows you to add a URL to your bookmark list.
- Add shortcut to home: creates a shortcut to the web2go
   Home page and then places it on an open area on an available extended screen.
- Share page: allows you to share the page using Gmail or as a message.
- Find on page: allows you to search in the current page.
- Desktop view: allows you to assign the browser to display the current page in the desktop view (to closely mimic the display as it would appear on a Desktop computer).
- Save for offline reading: allows you to store the current page in memory so that it can be read later even if you loose your Internet connection.
- Downloads: displays the download history.
- Print: provides print access on compatible Samsung printers.
- Settings: allows you to change the way you view your web pages by changing these options. See "Browser Settings" on page 243.

# **Entering a URL**

You can access a website quickly by entering the URL. Websites are optimized for viewing on your phone.

#### To enter a URL and go to a particular website:

From the homepage tap the **URL** field at the top of the screen, enter the URL and tap **Go**.

Note: This is not the same application as the Google Search Widget. The web2go screen can not be accessed via a Wi-Fi connection

#### Search the Internet

# To perform an Internet search using keywords:

- From within the Google search application, tap the Google search field, enter the keyword(s) to search using the on-screen keypad.
- 2. Tap from the list of search results that are displayed.
- Tap a link to view the website.

# **Adding and Deleting Windows**

You can have up to eight Internet windows open at one time.

#### To add a new window:

- 2. A new browser window displays.

Note: The number of currently open windows is displayed at the bottom of the Windows screen.

Scroll across the screen to view the currently active windows and tap an entry to launch the selected Internet window

#### To delete an existing window:

- 1. From your browser window, tap (Windows).
- Scroll across the available windows and locate your target window.
- 3. Tap next to the listing to delete the window.

## **Going Incognito**

The incognito feature allows you to view Internet sites outside of the normal browsing. Pages viewed in this incognito window won't appear within your browser history or search history, and no traces (such as cookies) are left on your device.

Note: Any downloaded files will be preserved and will stay on your device after you exit the incognito mode.

#### To add a new incognito window:

- From your browser window, tap (Windows) → (Incognito).
- 2. A new browser window displays.

Note: The incognito icon appears in the upper-left of the new browser window while you are in this mode.

#### To exit from the incognito window:

- From your browser window, tap (Windows) →
   (New window).
- 2. Scroll across the available windows and locate the incognito window.

3. Tap next to the incognito listing to delete this window.

# **Using Bookmarks**

While navigating a website, you can bookmark a site to quickly and easily access it at a future time. The URLs (website addresses) of the bookmarked sites display in the Bookmarks page. From the Bookmarks page you can also view your Most visited websites and view your History.

- From the webpage, tap (Bookmarks).
   The Bookmarks page displays. Additional pages include History and Saved pages.
- 2. Press is to display the following options:
  - List/Thumbnail view: Select Thumbnail view (default) to view a thumbnail of the webpage with the name listed, or select List view to view a list of the bookmarks with Name and URL listed.
  - Create folder: Creates a new folder in which to store new bookmarks.
  - Change order: Rearranges the current bookmarks.
  - Move to folder: Selected bookmarks are moved to a selected folder
  - Delete: Erases selected bookmarks.

- **3.** Tap a bookmark to view the webpage, or touch and hold a bookmark for the following options:
  - Open: Opens the webpage of the selected bookmark.
  - Open in new window: Opens the webpage in a new window.
  - Edit bookmark: Allows you to edit the name or URL of the bookmark. For more information, refer to "Editing Bookmarks" on page 242.
  - Add shortcut to home: Adds a shortcut to the bookmarked webpage to your phone's Home screen.
  - Share link: Allows you to share a URL address via Bluetooth, ChatON, Dropbox, Email, Flipboard, Gmail, Google+, Messaging, S Memo, or Wi-Fi Direct.
  - Copy link URL: Allows you to copy the URL address to use in a message.
  - Delete bookmark: Allows you to delete a bookmark. For more information, refer to "Deleting Bookmarks" on page 242.
  - **Set as homepage**: Sets the bookmark to your new homepage.

## **Adding Bookmarks**

- 2. Use the on-screen keypad to enter the name of the bookmark and the URL.
- 3. Assign a folder location. Home is the default.
- **4.** Tap **Save**. The new save page now appears on the Bookmarks page.

## **Editing Bookmarks**

- From the Bookmarks page, touch and hold the bookmark you want to edit.
- 2. Tap Edit bookmark.
- Use the on-screen keypad to edit the name of the bookmark or the URL
- 4. Tap Save or Cancel to exit the operation.

# **Deleting Bookmarks**

- From the Bookmarks page, touch and hold the bookmark you want to delete.
- 2. Tap Delete bookmark.
- 3. At the confirmation window, tap **0K**.

# **Emptying the Cookies**

A cookie is a small file placed on your phone by a website during navigation. In addition to containing some site-specific information, a cookie can also contain some personal information (such as a username and password) which might pose a security risk if not properly managed. You can clear these cookies from your device at any time.

- From an active Web page, press and then tap
   Settings → Privacy and security → Clear all cookie data.
- 2. Tap **0K** to delete the cookies or tap **Cancel** to exit.

# **Using Web History**

The History list displays a list of the most recently viewed websites. These entries can be used to return to previously unmarked web pages.

- 1. From the webpage, tap  $\Rightarrow$  History tab.
- Select a visited range category. Choose from: Today, Yesterday, or Most visited.
- **3.** Tap an entry to display the webpage.
  - or -

Press and then tap **Clear history** to delete the current History list.

# **Using Most Visited**

The Most visited list provides you with a list of the most visited and bookmarked websites. These entries are used to return to previously unmarked web pages.

From the webpage, tap → History → Mos visited tab.

A list of your most frequently visited webpages displays. The most frequently visited web pages display at the top of the list.

**2.** Tap any entry to display the selected webpage.

# **Browser Settings**

#### To configure browser settings:

- 1. From the Home screen, tap (Apps) (Internet).
- 2. Press and then tap **Settings**.
- Choose an option from the following categories:General:
  - Set home page: Sets the current home page for the Web browser.
  - Form auto-fill: Allows you to fill in Web forms with a single tap.

 Auto-fill text: Allows you to set the text used for the Web form auto-fill feature.

#### Privacy and security:

- Clear cache: Deletes all currently cached data. Tap OK to complete the process.
- Clear history: Clears the browser navigation history. Tap OK to complete the process.
- Show security warnings: Notifies you if there is a security issue with the current website. Remove the check mark to disable this function.
- Accept cookies: Allows sites, that require cookies, to save and read cookies from your device.
- Clear all cookie data: Deletes all current browser cookie files.
- Remember form data: Allows the device to store data from any previously filled out forms. Remove the check mark to disable this function.
- Clear form data: Deletes any stored data from previously filled out forms. Tap OK to complete the process.
- Enable location: Allows websites to request access to your location.

- Clear location access: Clears location access for all websites.
   Tap OK to complete the process.
- Remember passwords: Stores usernames and passwords for visited sites. Remove the check mark to disable this function.
- Clear passwords: Deletes any previously stored usernames or passwords. Tap OK to complete the process.
- Enable notifications: Enables notifications for all websites.
   Select either: Always on, On demand (user driven), or Off.
- Clear notifications: Clears Web notification access for all websites. Tap OK to complete the process.

# Accessibility:

- Force zoom: Allows you to override a website's zoom setting and forces a zoom view.
- Text size: Allows you to manually adjust the size of the on-screen text size (Scale text up and down), Zoom amount on double tap, and minimum font size via the use of an on-screen slider.

- Inverted rendering: Allows you to adjust the way a Web page is displayed to make it easier to view or read. Enabling this feature causes a page to rendered in reverse - Black becomes white and vice versa. On-screen white text is displayed as white text on a black background.
- Contrast: Allows you to adjust the on-screen contrast.

**Note:** The Contrast feature is disabled until the Inverted rendering function is active.

#### Advanced:

- Select search engine: Allows you to choose a default search engine for your phone. Choose from: Google, Yahoo!, or Bing.
- Open in background: New pages are launched in a separate page and displayed behind the current one. Remove the check mark to disable this function.
- Enable JavaScript: Enables javascript for the current Web page. Without this feature, some pages may not display properly. Remove the check mark to disable this function.
- Enable plug-ins: Allows the download of plug-ins such as Adobe Flash.
- **Default storage**: Sets the default storage to Memory card.

- Website settings: View advanced settings for individual websites.
- Default zoom: Adjusts the zoom feature. Set to Far, Medium, or Close.
- Open pages in overview: Displays an overview of recently viewed web pages.
- Auto-fit pages: Allows web pages to be resized to fit as much of the screen as possible.
- Block pop-ups: Prevents popup advertisement or windows from appearing on-screen. Remove the check mark to disable this function.
- Text encoding: Adjusts the current text encoding.
- Reset to default: Clears all browser data and resets all settings to default.

#### **Bandwidth Management:**

Preload search results: Allows the browser to preload high
confidence search results in the background. If the device can
accurately guess your in progress search, it will preempt you by
beginning to load the matching Web page before you complete
the search request.

 Load images: Allows web page images to load along with the other text components of a loaded website.

#### Labs:

- **Quick controls**: allows you to enable on-screen quick controls via the use of Swype thumb actions.
- Full screen: Allows Web pages to be resized to fit as much of the screen as possible.

#### **Bluetooth**

#### **About Bluetooth**

Bluetooth is a short-range communications technology that allows you to connect wirelessly to a number of Bluetooth devices, such as headsets and hands-free car kits, and Bluetooth-enabled handhelds, computers, printers, and wireless devices. The Bluetooth communication range is usually up to approximately 30 feet.

## **Turning Bluetooth On and Off**

#### To turn Bluetooth on:

1. Press  $\rightarrow$   $\rightarrow$  and then tap **Settings**.

2. In a single motion touch and slide the **Bluetooth** slider OFF to the right to turn it on ON.

The slider color indicates the activation status. When active, Republic displays in the Status area.

#### To turn Bluetooth off:

- 1. Press  $\rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  and then tap **Settings**.
- In a single motion touch and slide the Bluetooth slider to the left to turn it off OFF

#### **Bluetooth Status Indicators**

The following icons show your Bluetooth connection status at a glance:



Displays when Bluetooth is active.



Displays when Bluetooth is connected (paired) and communicating.



Displays when Bluetooth technology is active and there is an available open and visible bluetooth device.

# **Bluetooth Settings**

The Bluetooth settings menu allows you to set up many of the characteristics of your device's Bluetooth service, including:

- Entering or changing the name your device uses for Bluetooth communication and description
- Setting your device's visibility (or "discoverability") for other Bluetooth devices
- Displaying your device's Bluetooth address

# To access the Bluetooth Settings menu:

- Press → and then tap Settings → Bluetooth.
- 2. Verify Bluetooth is active (indicated by ON )
- 3. Press and tap the Device name, Visible time-out, and Show received files fields to set the options.

#### To change your Bluetooth name:

- Verify Bluetooth is active.
- 2. From the Bluetooth settings page, tap **Device name**.
- 3. Enter a new name.
- **4.** Tap **0K** to complete the rename process.

#### To set visibility:

- Verify your Bluetooth is active.
- From the top of the Bluetooth settings page, toggle the state of the visibility check mark. Activating this feature enabled your device visible allows other devices to pair and communicate.

Note: Your device visibility is based on the time set within the Visible time-out field (2 Minutes, 5 Minutes, 1 Hour, or Never timeout). Press (Menu) → Visible time-out. This value appears as a countdown within this Visible time-out field.

#### To scan for Bluetooth devices:

- Verify Bluetooth is active.
- From the bottom of the Bluetooth settings page, tap Scan to search for visible external Bluetoothcompatible devices such as headsets, devices, printers, and computers.

#### To review your Bluetooth received files:

- 1. Verify Bluetooth is active.
- 2. From the Bluetooth settings page, press and then tap **Show received files**.

#### **Pairing Bluetooth Devices**

The Bluetooth pairing process allows you to establish trusted connections between your device and another Bluetooth device. When you pair devices, they share a passkey, allowing for fast, secure connections while bypassing the discovery and authentication process.

Note: Pairing between two Bluetooth devices is a one-time process. Once pairing is established the devices continue to recognize their partnership and exchange information without entering a passcode.

#### To pair your device with another Bluetooth device:

- **1.** Verify Bluetooth is active.
- From the Bluetooth settings page, tap the Visibility field (shown by the device name).
  - Your device must be visible to successfully pair with an external device. This is shown by a green check mark.

- Tap Scan. Your device displays a list of discovered inrange Bluetooth devices.
- Tap a device from the list to initiate pairing.
- Enter the passkey or PIN code, if needed, and tap **OK**.
- The external device must accept the connection and enter your device's PIN code.

Once successfully paired to an external device, displays in the Status area.



**Note:** Due to different specifications and features of other Bluetooth-compatible devices, display and operations may be different, and functions such as transfer or exchange may not be possible with all Bluetoothcompatible devices.

Important! If callers can not hear you during a call while using a paired Bluetooth headset (with built-in microphone), verify the Call audio option is enabled within the entry's Bluetooth Settings page.

# **Configuring Bluetooth Device Settings**

Some connected Bluetooth devices are capable of more than just functioning as a headphone, but also have built in microphones for picking up voice. Although both functions are detected by the device and activated, there might be times when you need to change or update these settings for Phone and Media Audio:

- I can hear the other person but they can't hear me...
- I want to use my Bluetooth device only as a headphone
- 1. Verify Bluetooth is active.
  - From the Bluetooth settings page, tap (Settings).
- Toggle the **Call audio** field to activate/de-activate the Bluetooth device's on-board microphone.
- 4. Toggle the Media audio field to activate/de-activate the Bluetooth device's headset functions.

Note: If callers can not hear you during a call while using a paired Bluetooth headset (with built-in microphone), verify the Call audio option is enabled within the entry's Bluetooth Settings page.

## Disconnecting a Paired Bluetooth Device

Disconnecting a paired device breaks the connection between the device and your phone, but retains the knowledge of the pairing. At a later point when you wish to reconnect the device, there is no need to setup the connection information again.

- 1. Verify your Bluetooth is active.
- 2. From the Bluetooth settings page, tap the previously paired device (from the bottom of the page).
- 3. Tap **0K** to confirm disconnection.

Note: Disconnections are manually done but often occur automatically if the paired device goes out of range of your phone or it is powered off.

## **Deleting a Paired Bluetooth Device**

Deleting a device from your list removes its "connection record" and upon reconnection would require that you re-enter all the previous pairing information.

- Verify Bluetooth is active.
- 2. From the Bluetooth settings page, tap (Settings) → Unpair to delete the paired device.



## Sending Contacts via Bluetooth

Depending on your paired devices' settings and capabilities, you may be able to send pictures, Contact information, or other items using a Bluetooth connection.

Note: Prior to using this feature, Bluetooth must first be enabled on both your phone and the external device, and the recipient's device must be visible.

- 1. Verify your Bluetooth is active and your phone is visible.
- **2.** From the Home screen, tap (Contacts).
- Touch and hold the entry from the list to display the on-screen context menu.
- Tap Share namecard via → Bluetooth and select a paired external Bluetooth device.

Note: The external Bluetooth device must be visible and communicating for the pairing to be successful.

5. A Bluetooth share notification displays in your notifications list.

# **Enable Downloading for Web Applications**

Important! Before you can download a web application you must insert an SD into the phone and enable the Unknown sources feature (enables downloading). For more information, refer to "Installing the microSD Memory Card" on page 11. Also, see "Mounting the SD Card" on page 66

- Press → and then tap Settings → Security and lock screen → Unknown sources check box.
- Tap **0K** to allow install of non-Play Store applications.Tap again to remove the check mark and disable the installation of non-Play Store applications.

Warning! Not all web applications are safe to download. In order to protect your phone and data, use the Play Store to install web applications. For more information, refer to "Downloading a New Google Application" on page 224.

#### **PC Connections**

You can connect your device to a PC using an optional PC data cable using various USB connection modes.

Media storage: allows you to use the onboard storage capacity of both the device and optional microSD to store and upload files. This feature allows your computer to detect the device as a removable storage drive.

**Kies air**: allows you to sync your Windows PC wirelessly with your phone provided they are both on the same Wi-Fi network.

**Kies**: allows you to manage music, movies and photos. You can also backup precious contacts and calendars, download apps and podcasts and automatically upgrade device firmware. Kies conveniently syncs your life across all your devices.

Note: To sync your device to your computer it is highly recommended that you install Samsung Kies which is available at <a href="http://www.samsung.com/kies">http://www.samsung.com/kies</a> (for Windows/Mac).

Note: If you are a Windows XP user, ensure that you have Windows XP Service Pack 3 or higher installed on your computer. Also, ensure that you have Samsung Kies 2.0 or Windows Media Player 10 or higher installed on your computer.

## **Connecting as a Storage Device**

You can connect your device to a PC as a removable disk and access the file directory. If you insert a memory card in the device, you can also access the files directory from the memory card by using the device as a memory card reader.

**Note:** The file directory of the memory card displays as a removable disk, separate from the internal memory.

- Connect the USB cable to the device and connect the cable to the computer. After a few seconds, a pop-up window displays on the PC when connected.
- 2. Open the folder to view files.
- **3.** Copy files from the PC to the memory card.

# **Prior to using Kies air for Phone Update**

Before using Kies air to upgrade your device, it is recommended that you backup your personal data prior to use.

#### To export a Contact list to your microSD card:

- From the Home screen, tap (Contacts).
- Press and then tap Import/Export.
- 3. Tap Export to SD card → OK. For more information, refer to "Export/Import" on page 120.

## Verify your images and videos are on your microSD card:

- From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (Gallery).
- Verify the Gallery contains all of your pictures and videos
- Remove the back cover and remove the internal microSD card prior to initiating a Kies air update.

## **Enabling USB Debugging**

USB debugging must be enabled before being able to use the Development feature.

- Press → □ and then tap Settings →
   Developer options.
- Tap the USB debugging field to verify the feature is active before connecting your USB cable.
- **3.** Using an optional PC data cable, connect the multifunction jack on your device to a PC.

## **Kies Air**

Kies Air allows you to sync your Windows PC wirelessly with your phone provided they are both on the same Wi-Fi network. You can view and share call logs, videos, photos, music, bookmarks, ringtones, and even send SMS messages from your PC.

**Tip:** Before beginning, it is recommended that you update the Java application running on your machine.

 Sign onto the same Wi-Fi network from your phone and from your PC.

- 2. From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (air).
- 3. From the Kies air homescreen, tap Start.
- If prompted, select a network. Choose from either Wi-Fi or Portable Wi-Fi hotspot.
- 5. Write down the on-screen URL address.

Important! Both your phone and your computer must be connected to the same Wireless Access Point (WAP).

- From your computer, enter the URL in your Web browser.
- If prompted, an Access Request prompt is displayed on your device. Tap Allow to permit connection between the computer and device.
- On your computer, you may be prompted to run a Java plugin for a TransferManagerApplet. Click Run.
- Tap the Remember for today checkbox if you will be using Kies air with the same PC later.

- From your PC, a security warning may be displayed asking if you want to run this application. Click Run to continue.
- 11. On your PC, the Kies air screen is displayed. On your phone, the icon appears at the top of your screen.
- **12.** Follow the on-screen instructions to view and share information between your phone and PC.
- **13.** Click a link from the left navigation pane to access one of several device file categories such as:
  - [Device Name] provides an overview of all the main categories.
  - Photos/Videos/Music
  - Ringtones
  - Bookmarks
  - · Messages/Call Log/Contacts
  - File Explorer
  - Language settings
- 14. To exit the Kies air application, tap Stop on your device, then close out the Web browser on your computer.

#### Wi-Fi

#### **About Wi-Fi**

Wi-Fi (short for "wireless fidelity") is a term used for certain types of Wireless Local Area Networks (WLAN). Wi-Fi communication requires access to an existing and accessible Wireless Access Point (WAP). These WAPs can either be Open (unsecured) as within most Hot Spots, or Secured (requiring knowledge of the Router name and password).

Note: After you complete a connection to an active Wi-Fi network, the Wi-Fi Calling feature will automatically be enabled.

## **Activating Wi-Fi**

By default, your device's Wi-Fi feature is turned off (deactivated). Activating Wi-Fi allows your device to discover and connect to compatible in-range WAPs (Wireless Access Points).

1. Press  $\rightarrow$   $\rightarrow$  and then tap **Settings**.

2. In a single motion touch and slide the Wi-Fi slider to the right to turn it on ON. The slider color indicates the activation status. The device scans for available in-range wireless networks and displays them under Wi-Fi networks on the same screen.

#### Connecting to a Wi-Fi Network

- Press → □ and then tap Settings → Wi-Fi.
   The network names and security settings (Open network or Secured with WEP) of detected Wi-Fi networks display in the Wi-Fi networks section.
- 2. Tap the network you wish to connect to.

Note: When you select an open network you are automatically connected.

- Enter a wireless password (if necessary).
- 4. Tap Connect.

#### Wi-Fi Status Indicators

The following icons indicate the Wi-Fi connection status:



Displays when Wi-Fi is connected, active, and communicating with a Wireless Access Point (WAP).



Displays when Wi-Fi is active and there is an available open wireless network.



Displays when Wi-Fi Direct is active and configured for a direct connection to another compatible device in the same direct communication mode.



Displays when Wi-Fi Direct is active and communicating



Displays when Wi-Fi is being used as a Mobile HotSpot feature is active and communicating.

## **Manually Add a New Network Connection**

- 1. From the Wi-Fi network screen, tap Add network.
- 2. Enter the Network SSID (the name of your Wireless Access Point).
- Tap the Security field and select a security option. This
  must match the current security setting on your target
  WAP
- 4. Enter your WAP's password if the WAP is secure.
- Tap Save to store the new information and connect to the target WAP.

Note: No prompt to enter the WAP key displays if this is the second time to connect to a previously accessed or secured wireless network. The WAP key is required when the device is reset using factory default settings.

## **Deactivating Wi-Fi**

- 1. Press  $\rightarrow$   $\rightarrow$  and then tap **Settings**.
- 2. In a single motion touch and slide the **Wi-Fi** slider to the left to turn it off OFF ...
  - or -

Activate and Deactivate Wi-Fi from the Notification bar.

**Note:** Use of wireless data connections such as Wi-Fi and Bluetooth can reduce battery life and use times.

# Manually Scan for a Wi-Fi Network

- 1. Press  $\rightarrow$   $\rightarrow$  and then tap **Settings**  $\rightarrow$  **Wi-Fi**.
- 2. In a single motion touch and slide the Wi-Fi slider to the right to turn it on ON.
- Tap Scan.

## **Wi-Fi Advanced Settings**

The Wi-Fi settings - Advanced menu allows you to set up many of the device's Wi-Fi services, including:

- Setting the Wi-Fi sleep policy
- Viewing the device's MAC Address
- . Configuring use of either a DHCP or Static IP

#### To access the Wi-Fi Advanced Settings menu:

■ Press → and then tap Settings → Wi-Fi → Advanced.

# **USB Tethering**

This option allows you to share your device's mobile data connection via a direct USB connection between your device and a single computer. The Mobile HotSpot connectivity is a wireless version of this same functionality and allows you to provide Internet connectivity to multiple devices.

Note: You can not mount your device's microSD card to your computer while using the USB tethering feature.

If additional software or USB drivers are required, navigate to: <a href="http://www.samsung.com/us/support/downloads">http://www.samsung.com/us/support/downloads</a>.

#### To connect using USB Tethering:

- From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (Nobile HotSpot).
  - Press → and then tap Settings → More settings → Tethering and Mobile HotSpot.
- Plug in the USB cable between your computer and your device.
- Tap USB tethering from the Tethering menu. This places a green check mark next to the entry and activates the feature. A Tethering or HotSpot active notification briefly appears on the screen.
  - Look for the Tethering active icon in the Status bar area of the screen.
- Read the on-screen notification regarding data use and tap **0K**.

#### To disconnect tethering:

- From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (T)) (Mobile HotSpot).
- Tap USB tethering from the Tethering menu to remove the check mark and deactivate the feature.
- Remove the USB cable from the device.

# **Mobile HotSpot**

This feature allows you to turn your device into a Wi-Fi hotspot. The feature works best when used in conjunction with HSPA+ (4G) data services (although 3G service can also be used).

The Mobile HotSpot connectivity is a wireless version of this same functionality and allows you to provide Internet connectivity to multiple devices.

Important! The Mobile HotSpot service cannot be active when device is connected to Wi-Fi. Please disconnect your Wi-Fi connection prior to active this service.

Note: You must have a tethering plan on your account in order to use the Mobile HotSpot. You cannot use data on the device while using Mobile HotSpot.

#### To activate the Mobile HotSpot service:

- From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (Mobile HotSpot).
   Or –
   Press → and then tap Settings →
- More settings → Tethering and Mobile HotSpot.
   In a single motion touch and slide the Mobile HotSpot
- Read the on-screen notification regarding data use and tap OK.
- Create a new Network SSID name and then write it down.
- 5. Verify the Security field is set to WPA2 PSK.
- **6.** Enter a new password then write it down.
- 7. Tap Save to store the new settings.

slider to the right to turn it on

Confirm the Mobile HotSpot icon appears at the top of the screen.

Note: By default, the connection is not secured.

Note: Using your Mobile HotSpot drains your device's battery much faster. The best way to keep using the device as a HotSpot is by connecting to a Charger.

#### To connect to the HotSpot:

- Enable Wi-Fi (wireless) functionality on your target device (laptop, media device, etc.).
- Scan for Wi-Fi networks from the external device and select your device's Mobile HotSpot name from the network list.
  - The SSID name for your device's hotspot is determined by what you entered into the Network SSID field.
  - You can change the name by tapping Configure → Network SSID and changing the entry.
- Select this HotSpot and follow your on-screen instructions to complete the connection.
- Launch your Web browser to confirm you have an Internet connection.

## To change the Portable HotSpot password:

- From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (Mobile HotSpot).
- Tap Mobile HotSpot → Configure.
- Tap the Security field and select WPA2 PSK.
- With security enabled, delete the previous password and enter a new one into the Password field.

Important! The more complex the password, the harder it will be for intruders to break your security. It is recommended that you not use names, birthdays, or other personal information.

5. Tap Save to store the new settings.

# **Section 11: Time Management**

This section describes how you can manage time using timerelated applications such as the Calendar, Alarm Clock, Analog or Digital clock, and the World clock.

#### **Calendar**

With this feature, you can consult the calendar by day, week, or month, create events, and set an alarm to act as a reminder. Google Calendar is built into the phone and synchronizes both new and existing entries between your phone and your online Google account.

Important! You should previously add an account (Facebook, Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync, or Google) prior to using the Calendar.

- From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (Show More) to display these tabs:
  - Year: displays the Year view.
  - Month: displays the Month view.
  - Week: displays the Week view.
  - Day: displays the Day view.

- Agenda: displays the Agenda view.
- Task: allows you to search for tasks.
- 2. Tap (Create event) to create a new Calendar event
  - or -

Tap **Today** to display the current date indicated by a blue box, then press and select one of the following options:

- Go to: displays a specific date.
- **Delete**: allows you to delete All events, All events before today, or an individual event.
- **Search**: allows you to search within your current events.
- Sync: synchronizes your current calendar events with your available accounts (such as Gmail, Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync, etc..).
- **Settings**: displays a list of configurable settings.

## **Creating a Calendar Event**

- 1. From the Home screen, tap  $\bigoplus$  (Apps)  $\rightarrow$ 31 (Calendar).
- 2. Within the Year, Month, Week, and Day tabs, tap (Create event).



## **Calendar Settings**

Using the Calendar settings you can select the day with which you want the calendar to begin. You also select how you want to view the calendar, by Month, Week, or Day or determine how to manage events, notifications, sounds, and defaults reminders.

- 1. From the Home screen, tap  $(Apps) \rightarrow 31$ .



- Press **→ Settings**.
- Tap Week view and select a type: Timeline or Analog.
- Tap First day of week and select either Local default. Saturday, Sunday or Monday.
- Tap **Hide declined events** to activate this option. A check mark indicates selection.
- Tap Lock time zone (to lock event time based on your current user-selected time zone). Select a time zone from within the Select time zone field.

- 7. Tap Show week number to display the week numbers along the side of the week entries.
- 8. Tap Calendars and select the type of general synchronization settings you want. A check mark indicates selection.
- 9. Tap Set alerts & notifications to adjust the event notification method. Choose from: Alert. Status bar notification, and Off.
- 10. Tap Select ringtone to assign a ringtone to a calendar event notification
- 11. Tap Default reminder time to assign a default time frame for event reminders.
- **12.** Tap **Vibration** to set the Event notification tone to vibrate.
- 13. Tap Notifications while screen is off to display notifications on the full screen while it is turned off.
- 14. Tap Sync events/tasks to select those calendar events and task to sync based on current accounts.
- 15. Tap Swipe with two fingers to change the way events are displayed when swiped.

## Clock

This feature allows you to create an alarm to ring at a specified time, track time in other parts of the world, use a stopwatch, or set a timer.

From the Home screen, tap  $(Apps) \rightarrow (Clock)$ .

## **Setting an Alarm**

- From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (Clock).
- 2. Tap (Create alarm).
- Use the plus or minus symbols to enter the hour, and minutes, then tap AM or PM (toggles depending on which was last selected).
- 4. Tap the Alarm repeat field and touch the number of times you want this alarm to repeat. Selections are: day blocks or Repeat weekly. Selected day blocks turn blue when active.
- Tap the Alarm type field and select one of the following: Melody, Vibration, Vibration and melody, or Briefing.

- Slide the slider bar left or right in the Alarm volume field to decrease or increase the alarm volume. A sample of the volume level plays.
- Tap the Alarm tone field and select one of the following: Sounds, or Go to My files. Locate a sound to use as an alarm ringtone then tap OK to activate the ringtone.
- 8. Tap the radio button to activate a tone for the Snooze. Tap the field to assign a duration time (3 minutes, 5 minutes, 10 minutes, 15 minutes, or 30 minutes) and Snooze repeat (1 time, 2 times, 3 times, 5 times, and 10 times).
  - **Duration** indicates the length of time the alarm will remain silent between alarm notifications (snooze time).
  - Snooze repeat indicates the numbers of snooze sessions that
    are assigned to this alarm. How many times will the snooze
    silence the alarm.

Move the Smart alarm slider to ON to activate
this feature which slowly increases screen brightness
and the volume of nature tones to simulate dawn
breaking.

Tap the field to assign a duration time (3 min, 5 min, 10 min, 15 min, or 30 min) and nature tone (Fairy fountain, Birdsong by the lake, Sparkling mist, The secret forest, Serenity, or Gentle spring rain).

- Duration category describes the length of time the alarm will remain silent between alarm notifications (snooze time).
- **Tone** category provides one of several nature sounds that are used as the alarm tone.
- **10.** Tap the **Name** field and enter a name for this Alarm.
- 11. Tap Save to store the new alarm event.

#### **Turning Off an Alarm**

 To stop an alarm when it sounds, touch and slide to any direction.



#### **Setting the Snooze Feature**

 To activate the Snooze feature after an alarm sounds, touch and slide to any direction. Snooze must first be set in the alarm settings.

#### **World Clock**

This feature allows you to find out what time it is another part of world.

- From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (Clock).
- 2. Tap the World clock tab.
- Tap Add city then scroll and select the desired city, or tap in the search field to locate a city.

#### To assign DST settings:

- 1. Locate a desired city from the World Clock list.
- 2. Touch and hold a city and select **DST settings**.
- Select a DST setting (Automatic, Off, 1 hour or 2 hours). If Daylight Savings Time is selected, the sun symbol on the World Clock listing will appear orange.

# **Stopwatch**

This feature allows you to capture elapsed time while letting the stopwatch keep running.

- From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (Clock) → Stopwatch tab.
- **2.** Tap **Start** to start the stopwatch counter.
- 3. Tap Lap to begin the lap time counter.
- **4.** Tap **Stop** to stop the counter.
- Tap Restart to restart the lap counter. You can have multiple lap times.
- 6. Tap Reset to reset the counter.

# **Setting a Timer**

- 1. From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (Clock) → Timer tab.
- Tap the Hours, Minutes, or Seconds field and use the on-screen keypad to enter the hour, minute, or seconds. The timer plays an alarm at the end of the countdown.
- 3. Tap Start to start the timer.
- Tap Stop to stop the timer or Reset to reset the timer and start over.

**5.** Tap **Restart** to resume the timer counter.

# **Configuring a Desk Clock**

This feature lets you activate an on-screen clock that can be viewed when the device is docked.

■ From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (Clock) → Desk clock tab.

# **Section 12: Changing Your Settings**

This section explains the sound and phone settings for your device. It includes such settings as: display, security, memory, and any extra settings associated with your device.

# **Accessing Settings**

From the Home screen, tap (Apps) → (Settings).

— or —

Press → I and then tap Settings. The Settings screen displays.

# Wi-Fi Settings

This section describes the Wi-Fi settings. For more information, refer to "Wi-Fi" on page 253.

## **Activating Wi-Fi**

- 1. Press  $\rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  and then tap **Settings**.
- In a single motion touch and slide the Wi-Fi slider to the right to turn it on ON. The device scans for available in-range wireless networks and displays them under Wi-Fi networks on the same screen.

# Wi-Fi settings

Once set up for Wi-Fi connectivity, your device automatically uses Wi-Fi, when available, for all your mobile services.

■ Press and then tap Settings → Wi-Fi → Advanced. Configure the settings as desired.

The available Wi-Fi connection are displayed with a security type displayed next to them.

#### **Network Notification**

By default, when Wi-Fi is on, you receive notifications in the Status bar anytime your phone detects an available Wi-Fi network. You can deactivate this feature if you do not want to receive notifications.

- Press → and then tap Settings → Wi-Fi → Advanced.
- Tap Network notification. A check mark displayed next to the feature indicates Network notification is active.
- Tap Network notification again to remove the check mark and deactivate this feature.

# Wi-Fi During Sleep

By default, when your device enter a sleep mode, your Wi-Fi connection stays on all the time. If the feature is Never enabled during sleep that current data usage is taken over by your SIM and its network connection.

Press → and then tap Settings → Wi-Fi →
 Advanced → Keep Wi-Fi on during sleep.

- 2. Select an available option:
  - Always: maintains your current active Wi-Fi connection even during sleep.
  - Only when plugged in: maintains the active Wi-Fi connection only when the device detects it is connected to a power supply.
     This reduced the drain on your device's battery.
  - Never (increase data usage): shuts off the current Wi-Fi
    connection during sleep and diverts any current data usage to
    the cellular network connection.

## Manually Adding a Wi-Fi Network

- Press → and then tap Settings → Wi-Fi →
   Add network.
- **2.** Enter the Network SSID (the name of your Wireless Access Point).
- Tap the Security field and select a security option. This must match the current security setting on your target WAP (Wireless Access Point).
- **4.** Enter your WAP's password if the WAP is secure.
- 5. Tap **Save** to store the new information and connect to the target WAP.

Note: An SSID is a unique key which identifies a wireless LAN. Its purpose is to stop other wireless equipment from accessing your LAN — whether accidentally or intentionally. To communicate, wireless devices must be configured with the same SSID.

## **Bluetooth settings**

In this menu you can activate Bluetooth, view or assign a device name, activate your phone so other Bluetooth devices can discover it, or scan for other, available Bluetooth devices with which to pair. For more information, refer to "Bluetooth" on page 245.

## **Turning Bluetooth On and Off**

#### To turn Bluetooth on:

- 1. Press  $\rightarrow$   $\rightarrow$  and then tap **Settings**.
- 2. In a single motion touch and slide the **Bluetooth** slider to the right to turn it on ON.

The slider color indicates the activation status. When active, displays in the Status area.

## To turn Bluetooth off:

- Press → □ and then tap Settings.
- In a single motion touch and slide the Bluetooth slider to the left to turn it off OFF

**Note:** Bluetooth must be enabled prior to use.

## **Activating the Device Name**

- Press → and then tap Settings → Bluetooth.
- 2. Verify Bluetooth is active (indicated by ON)
- Press and tap the Device name. The assigned device name displays.
- 4. Tap to erase the current device name and enter a new name for this device using the keyboard.
- 5. Tap **0K** to confirm your setting.

# Activating Visibility

- Press → and then tap Settings → Bluetooth.
- 2. Verify your Bluetooth is active.
- From the top of the Bluetooth settings page, toggle the state of the visibility check mark. Activating this feature enabled your device visible allows other devices to pair and communicate.

## **Scanning for Devices**

This option allows you to scan for active Bluetooth devices so you can pair with them.

- Press → and then tap Settings → Bluetooth.
- From the bottom of the Bluetooth settings page, tap Scan to search for visible external Bluetoothcompatible devices such as headsets, devices, printers, and computers.

**Important!** Some Bluetooth devices are secured and require a PIN number to confirm and pair with them.

Enter a PIN to pair with the device, if one is required, and tap **0K**.

## **Data Usage**

Monitor and mange your device's data usage capabilities. Features include activation/deactivation or network data usage, set mobile data usage for a set period of time, and view application data usage.

■ Press and then tap Settings → Data usage.

#### To activate/deactivate Mobile data usage:

- Press → □ and then tap Settings → Data usage.
- Tap the Mobile data field to activate the feature. A green checkmark indicates the feature is active.
- **3.** Tap the **Mobile data** field again to deactivate the feature.

#### To set a mobile data limit:

- Press → □ and then tap Settings → Data usage.
- 2. Place a check mark in the Set mobile data limit field.
- Read the on-screen disclaimer info and tap OK.

- Touch and drag the far right ends of the Red or Orange horizontal lines to manually adjust both the Warning and Maximum data limits.
- **5.** Touch and drag the bottom grey vertical lines to adjust the time frames.
- Tap the Data usage cycle button and select either the current cycle or define your own by selecting Change cycle.
- 7. Press and then select from the available onscreen options:
  - Data roaming allows you to connect to your service provider's partner networks and access data services when you are out of your service providers area of coverage. For more information, refer to "Data Roaming" on page 269.
  - Restrict background data prevents background data usage.
     This can help prevent over usage of your data minutes.
  - **Show Wi-Fi usage** activates an additional Wi-Fi tab that shows you your Wi-Fi data usage.

# **More Settings**

This tab displays additional wireless and network information.

■ Press → and then tap Settings → More settings.

## **Using Airplane mode**

This mode allows you to use many of your device's features, such as Camera, Games, and more, when you are in an airplane or in any other area where making or receiving calls or data is prohibited.

Important! When your device is in Airplane mode, it cannot send or receive any calls or access online information or applications.

- Press → and then tap Settings → More settings.
- Tap Airplane mode. A check mark displayed next to the feature indicates Airplane mode is active.
   The Airplane mode icon is displayed at the top of your screen.

#### Mobile networks

Before you use applications such as Google Maps and find your location or search for places of interest, you must enable the Mobile networks options.

■ Press → and then tap Settings → More settings → Mobile networks.

The following options display:

#### Use packet data

Allows you to activate data usage on your device.

Press → and then tap Settings →
 More settings → Mobile networks → Use packet data.

#### **Data Roaming**

Data roaming allows you to connect to your service provider's partner networks and access data services when you are out of your service providers area of coverage.

Press → and then tap Settings →
 More settings → Mobile networks.

- Tap Data roaming to connect to data services while roaming outside your network.
  - or -

Tap **Data roaming** again to remove the green check mark and deactivate the feature.

#### **Access Point Names**

To access a wireless access point:

Press → ☐ and then tap Settings → Mobile networks → Access Point Names. A list of the Access point names display. The active access point displays a bright green, filled circle to the right of the name.

## **Network Operators**

Using this feature you can view the current network connection. You can also scan and select a network operator manually, or set the network selection to Automatic.

- Press → and then tap Settings →
   More settings → Mobile networks.
- Tap Network operators. The current network connection displays at the bottom of the list.

Important! You must deactivate data service prior to searching for an available network.

- 3. Tap Search now to manually search for a network.
- Tap Select automatically to automatically select a network connection.

**Note:** Connecting to 2G networks slows the data transfer speed and time.

## **Default Setup Options**

Your phone default is set to Automatic (to automatically search for an available network. You can set this option to Manual to select a network each time you connect.

- Press → □ and then tap Settings →
   More settings → Mobile networks → Network
   operators.
- Tap Default setup.

- Tap Manual to locate and connect to a network manually.
  - or -

Tap **Automatic** to allow the device to automatically select a network.

## **USB Tethering and Mobile HotSpot**

This option allows you to share your phone's mobile data connection via a direct USB connection between your phone and computer. A wireless version of this same functionality would be the Mobile AP feature.

Note: You can not mount your device's microSD card to your computer while using the USB tethering feature.

If additional software or USB drivers are required, navigate to: <a href="http://www.samsung.com/us/support/downloads">http://www.samsung.com/us/support/downloads</a>.

Press → and then tap Settings →
 More settings → Tethering and Mobile HotSpot.

For more information, refer to "USB Tethering" on page 256. For more information, refer to "Mobile HotSpot" on page 257.

#### **Near Field Communication**

This feature is used to read and exchange tags. When used in conjunction with Android Beam, your device can be used to beam application content when NFC-capable devices are touched. For more information, refer to "TecTiles" on page 231.

- Press → and then tap Settings → More settings.
- Tap the NFC field. A check mark displayed next to the feature indicating it is enabled.

Note: Enabling NFC also enables Android Beam and S Beam.

#### **Android Beam**

This feature (when activated via NFC) allows you to directly beam application content to another NFC-capable device when they are in direct contact. These files are typically small such as Calendar and Contact entries.

- Press → and then tap Settings → More settings.
- 2. Verify the NFC feature is active.

- Tap Android Beam and make sure the feature is turned on.
- If not already active, in a single motion touch and slide the Android Beam slider to the right to turn it on ON.
- Complete the transfer process between the two NFC-enabled devices by placing them back to back.

#### S Beam

This feature (when activated via NFC) allows you to beam large files directly to another compatible device that is in direct contact. These files can be larger, such as Videos, HD pictures, and other large files. You can beam images and videos from your gallery, music files from your music player, and more.

- Press → and then tap Settings →
   More settings.
- 2. Verify the NFC feature is active.
- 3. Tap S Beam and make sure the feature is turned on.
- 4. If not already active, in a single motion touch and slide the S Beam slider to the right to turn it on ON.

Complete the transfer process between the two NFC-enabled devices by placing them back to back.

This feature can come in very handy to quickly share pictures between users with compatible S Beam devices. For more information, refer to "Using S Beam to Share Pictures" on page 158.

## Wi-Fi Direct Setup and Settings

You can configure your device to connect directly with other Wi-Fi capable devices. This is an easy way to transfer data between devices. These devices must be enabled for Wi-Fi direct communication. This connection is direct and not via a HotSpot or WAP.

Note: Activating this feature will disconnect your current Wi-Fi network connection.

#### To give your Wi-Fi Direct connection a unique name:

It can be difficult to pair to external devices if all you have is a generic name (ex: Android 12345). It is recommended you provide your connection with a unique name.

- Press → and then tap Settings →
   More settings → Wi-Fi Direct.
- 2. Press then tap Device name.
- Edit the current name and tap **OK** to save the new identification.

#### To activate your connection:

- Press → and then tap Settings → More settings.
- In a single motion touch and slide the Wi-Fi Direct slider to the right to turn it on ON. The slider color indicates the activation status.
- 3. Read the on-screen information and tap **OK**.
- Tap Scan and select the single device name to begin the connection process to another Wi-Fi Direct compatible device.
  - or -

Tap **Multi-connect** → **Scan** and select all the device names to begin the connection process to these Wi-Fi Direct compatible devices.

**Note:** The target device must also have Wi-Fi Direct service active and running before it can be detected by your device.

- Tap Done. The direct connection is then established.
- 6. When prompted to complete the connection, tap 0K. The status field now reads "Connected" and your connected device is listed within the Wi-Fi Direct devices listing.

#### **AllShare Cast**

With AllShare Cast, you can wirelessly mirror what is currently displayed on your device's screen with an external TV via the AllShare Cast Hub<sup>®</sup>.

For more information, refer to "AllShare Cast Hub" on page 194.

Press → and then tap Settings →
 More settings → AllShare Cast.

 In a single motion touch and slide the AllShare Cast slider to the right to turn it on ON. The slider color indicates the activation status.

Note: This feature allows a connection between your device and the optional AllShare Cast Hub, via a shared Wi-Fi Direct connection. The AllShare Cast Hub then allows the communicating TV to mirror what is being shown on the device's display.

For more information, refer to "AllShare Cast Hub" on page 194.

## **VPN** settings

The VPN settings menu allows you to set up and manage Virtual Private Networks (VPNs).

Note: Before using VPN, you must first set up a screen unlock PIN or password. For more information, refer to "Security and Lock Screen" on page 294.

## Adding a VPN

Before you add a VPN you must determine which VPN protocol to use: PPTP, L2TP/IPSec PSK, L2TP/IPSec RSA, IPSec Xauth PSK, IPSec Xauth RSA, IPSec Hybrid RSA.

**Important!** Before you can use a VPN you must establish and configure one.

- Press → and then tap Settings →
   More settings → VPN.
- If prompted, read the screen lock information and follow the on-screen steps to setup an unlock PIN or password.
- Tap Add VPN network.
- In the form that appears, fill in the information provided by your network administrator.
- Tap Save.

Note: Similar setup process can be used for all available VPN types.

## Connecting to a VPN

- Press → and then tap Settings →
   More settings → VPN.
- 2. Tap the VPN entry you want to connect to.
- **3.** Enter any requested credentials into the pop-up that opens.
- 4. Tap Connect.

#### **Edit a VPN**

- Press → □ and then tap Settings → More settings → VPN.
- 2. Touch and hold the VPN that you want to edit.
- In the pop-up that opens, select Edit network.
- Make the desired VPN setting changes.
- Tap Save.

## **Delete a VPN**

- Press → and then tap Settings →
   More settings → VPN.
- 2. Touch and hold the VPN that you want to delete.
- 3. Tap **Delete network** within the pop-up that opens up.

## Wi-Fi Calling

You can configure your device to make and receive calls over an active Wi-Fi connection. Wi-Fi Calling is an excellent solution for coverage issues in and around the home or wherever cellular coverage is limited. Minutes used while connected to the Wi-Fi network count against available rate plan minutes. For more information, refer to "Wi-Fi Calling" on page 79.

- Ensure that the Wi-Fi connected icon displays on the status bar.
- 2. Press → □ and then tap Settings → More settings.
- Tap the Wi-Fi Calling field and place a green check mark in the adjacent field. This check mark indicates the feature is active.

## Wi-Fi Calling Settings

Important! A new ISIM card must be installed within the device prior to using this feature. Wi-Fi must first be active and communicating prior to launching Wi-Fi Calling.

- Press → and then tap Settings →
   More settings → Wi-Fi Calling Settings.
- Tap Connection Preferences and select a preference for use of the Wi-Fi Calling feature:
  - Wi-Fi Preferred: Wi-Fi network is preferred over cellular network when making calls. Calling requires you to stay in the Wi-Fi range.
  - Wi-Fi Only: Wi-Fi network is required for making calls. Calling requires you to stay in the Wi-Fi range.
  - Cellular Preferred: The cellular network is preferred over a Wi-Fi network when making calls.
- 3. Tap **OK** to save the setting.
- Tap Help from the main Wi-Fi Calling Settings page to navigate through either an on-screen tutorial or review the top 10 Wi-Fi Calling questions.

#### Kies via Wi-Fi

- Press → and then tap Settings →
   More settings.
- Tap Kies via Wi-Fi → 0K.
- Select a network connection and follow the on-screen connection process.

Refer to the Kies Air process information for more information. For more information, refer to "Kies Air" on page 252.

## **Nearby devices**

This option allows you to share your media files with nearby devices using DLNA and connected to the same Wi-Fi.

- Press → and then tap Settings →
   More settings → Nearby devices.
- Verify Wi-Fi Direct is enabled and you are paired with the device you wish to detect and share content with.
- In a single motion, drag the slider to the right to turn it on ON. This action activates the device's ability to share files.
- **4.** Verify (Nearby devices) appears at the top of the screen.

- 5. At the Nearby devices prompt, tap **OK**.
- Tap Shared contents, then check the media you would like to share. Tap OK.
- Tap Device name, then use the on-screen keyboard to change the name shown to others. Tap Save.
- Tap Access control, then what devices are allowed access. Choose from Allow all or Only allowed devices.
   The allowed devices are configured in the following Allowed devices list.
- Tap Allowed devices list, then select the connected devices you would like to allow.
- Tap Not-allowed devices list, then select the connected devices you would like to not allow.
- Tap Download to, then select the destination of any downloaded (shared) content. Choose from USB storage (phone) or SD card.
- 12. Tap Upload from other devices, then select the actions you'll take when you upload content from other devices. Choose from either Always accept, Always ask, or Always reject.

# **Call Settings**

To access the Call settings menu:

- . Press and then tap (Phone).
- 2. Press and then tap Call settings.

# **Configuring General Call Settings**

Configure the general call settings using this option.

- 1. Press and then tap 🚺 (Phone).
- Press and then tap Call settings.
- 3. Tap one of the following options:
  - **Call rejection**: allows you to manage your rejection mode and rejection list.
  - Auto reject mode: sets the phone to automatically reject incoming calls or messages.
  - Auto reject list: provides access to current rejection entries and numbers
  - **Set reject messages**: allows you to manage both existing rejection messages and create new ones.

- Call alert: allows you to assign call alert tones and activate call alerts and vibration.
  - Call vibrations: vibrates the phone when the called party answers.
  - Call status tones: assigns sounds settings during the call.
     Choose from: Call connect tone, Minute minder, and Call end tone
  - Alerts on call: selects whether alarm and message notification is turned off during a call.
- Call answering/ending: allows you to manage the settings for answering and ending calls.
  - **Answering key** allows you to press a key to answer the phone.
  - The Power key ends calls allows you to press the power key to end the current call.
- Auto screen off during calls: allows you to force the screen to turn off during an active call.
- Accessory settings for call: allows you to assign headset settings during incoming calls.
  - Automatic answering configures the device to automatically answer and incoming call when a headset is detected.

- Automatic answering timer configures the time delay before the device automatically accepts the incoming call.
- Outgoing call conditions configures the connected Bluetooth device to make outbound calls within one of two settings: Even when device locked or Only when device unlocked.
- **Use extra vol. for calls**: activating this feature places an extra volume button on your currently active call screen.
- In-call sound EQ settings: allows you to configure the audio equalizer used during an active call. Choose from either In-call sound EQ or Personalized EQ.
- Increase volume in pocket: increases the ringtone volume when the device is in a pocket or a bag. Uses the proximity sensor to detect its location.
- Call forwarding: configures call forwarding options.
- Additional settings: allows you to configure additional call settings. For more information, refer to "Configuring Additional Voice Call Settings" on page 280.
- Voicemail service: allows you to assign the service.
- Voicemail settings: displays the settings for the voicemail.
- **Vibrate**: configures the vibrate settings. Choose from Always, Only in silent mode, or Never.

- **TTY mode**: allows you to configure the TTY settings. For more information, refer to "*TTY Mode*" on page 279.
- Hearing aids: allows you to enable/disable hearing aid compatibility. For more information, refer to "HAC Mode" on page 280.
- Accounts: allows you to add SIP accounts and receive incoming calls from those type of accounts.
- Use Internet calling: allows you to configure the incoming call and SIP account information.

## **Configuring Call Forwarding**

- 1. Press and then tap (Phone).
- 2. Press and then tap Call settings → Call forwarding
  → Voice call.
- 3. Tap an available option:
  - Always forward: incoming calls are re-routed to a secondary number that you specify.
  - Forward when busy: forwards all your calls to voicemail when your phone is busy.
  - Forward when unanswered: automatically forwards to your voicemail number when the phone is not answered, and otherwise allows you to enter a voicemail number.

 Forward when unreachable: automatically forwards to your voicemail number when the phone is not in service, or is turned off

#### **TTY Mode**

A TTY (also known as a TDD or Text Telephone) is a telecommunications device that allows people who are deaf, hard of hearing, or who have speech or language disabilities, to communicate by telephone.

Your phone is compatible with select TTY devices. Please check with the manufacturer of your TTY device to ensure that it is compatible with digital cell phones.

Your phone and TTY device will connect via a special cable that plugs into your phone's headset jack. If this cable was not provided with your TTY device, contact your TTY device manufacturer to purchase the connector cable.

- 1. Press and then tap (Phone).
- Press and then tap Call settings → TTY mode.
- Tap TTY Full, TTY HCO, or TTY VCO to activate the feature, or TTY Off to deactivate the feature. Off is the default setting.

#### **HAC Mode**

This menu is used to activate or deactivate Hearing Aid Compatibility for this device.

- 1. Press and then tap 🚺 (Phone).
- **2.** Press and then tap **Call settings**.
- Tap the Hearing aids field to activate the feature (green check mark), or tap it again to deactivate the feature. Off is the default setting.

# **Configuring Additional Voice Call Settings**

- 1. Press and then tap (Phone).
- Press and then tap Call settings → Additional settings.
- **3.** Tap one of the following options:
  - Caller ID: chooses whether your number is displayed when someone answers your outgoing call. Choose from: Network default, Hide number, or Show number.
  - **Call barring**: blocks specific types of calls (All outgoing calls, International calls, etc..).
  - Call waiting: notifies you of an incoming call while you are on another call.

- Auto redial: automatically redial the dialed number if it is unable to connect or the call is cut off.
- Noise reduction: suppresses background noise on your side of the conversation during an active call.
- Fixed dialing numbers: manages fixed dialing numbers. See description below.
- Auto area code: allows you to automatically prepend a specific area code to all outbound calls. For more information, refer to "Using Auto Area Code" on page 281.

# Configuring the In Call Equalizer

- Press and then tap (Phone).
- Press and then tap Call settings → In-call sound EQ settings.
  - In-call sound EQ: assigns a sound equalizer preset for use during an active call. Sometimes you might need the sound to be clearer or optimized.
  - Personalized EQ: allows you to configure and tailor the in-call settings that are unique to you. Tap Start and follow the onscreen instructions.

## **Using Auto Area Code**

This feature prepends an area code to all outbound calls. When enabled, the designated prefix is always added before your dialed numbers.

Ex: If you were using 999 as your area code, 555-5555 would be dialed as 999 - 555-5555.

- 1. Press and then tap (Phone).
- Press and then tap Call settings → Additional settings.
- Tap Auto area code, enter a new prefix, and then tap OK.
- In a single motion, drag the slider to the right to turn it on ON.

# **Fixed Dialing Numbers**

Fixed Dial Number (FDN), allows you to restrict outgoing calls to a limited set of phone numbers.

## **Enabling FDN**

- 1. Press and then tap (Phone).
- 2. Press and then tap Call settings → Additional settings → Fixed dialing numbers.
- 3. Tap Enable FDN.

4. At the prompt, enter your PIN2 code and tap 0K.

Important! Not all SIM cards use a PIN2 code. If your SIM card does not, this menu does not display.

The PIN2 code is provided by your carrier Entering.

The PIN2 code is provided by your carrier. Entering an incorrect PIN2 code could cause the phone to lock. Contact customer service for assistance.

## **Changing the PIN2 Code**

- . Press and then tap 🚺 (**Phone**).
- 2. Press and then tap Call settings → Additional settings → Fixed dialing numbers.
- Tap Change PIN2.
- **4.** At the prompt, enter your old PIN2 code.
- **5.** At the prompt, enter a new PIN2 code.
- **6.** Confirm your PIN2 code.

Important! Not all SIM cards use a PIN2 code. If your SIM card does not, this menu does not display.

The PIN2 code is provided by your carrier. Entering the PIN2 incorrectly three times will cause the device to lock. Contact customer service for assistance.

## **Managing the FDN List**

When this feature is enabled, you can make calls only to phone numbers stored in the FDN list on the SIM card.

- 1. Press and then tap (Phone).
- 2. Press and then tap Call settings → Additional settings → Fixed dialing numbers.
- Tap Enable FDN.
- At the prompt, enter your PIN2 code and tap **0K**. FDN is enabled.
- 5. Tap FDN list then press and then tap Add contact or edit the contacts that were stored.

Important! Not all SIM cards use a PIN2 code. If your SIM card does not, this menu does not display.

The PIN2 code is provided by your carrier. Entering the PIN2 incorrectly three times will cause the device to lock. Contact customer service for assistance.

#### **Voicemail**

You can view your voicemail number from this menu.

- 1. Press and then tap (Phone).
- Press and then tap Call settings → Voicemail service.
- Tap My carrier.
- If an additional voicemail service is in use (other than carrier), tap Voice settings to now view your selected voicemail number and information.

# **Sound Settings**

From this menu you can control the sounds on the phone as well as configure the display settings.

 $\blacksquare$  Press  $\longrightarrow$  and then tap **Settings**  $\rightarrow$  **Sound**.

The following options display:

#### **Sound Profiles**

- 1. Press  $\rightarrow$  and then tap Settings  $\rightarrow$  Sound.
- 2. Tap Sound profiles.
- 3. Select either Sound, Vibrate or Mute.

Note: Use both the Sound profile and enable the Mute option to guarantee no vibrations or sounds from your device.

This really helps at night so you don't wake up hearing your device vibrating on a nearby counter or table.

- or -
- From the Home screen, press the Lock key until Device options displays.
- Tap Silent mode to activate or deactivate this mode (the current mode displays).

## Silent mode via Device Options Screen

Silent mode is convenient when you wish to stop the phone from making noise, in a theater for example. In Silent Mode the speaker is muted and the phone only vibrates to notify you of incoming calls, or other functions that normally have a defined tone or sound as an alert

- From the Home screen, press and hold the Lock key until Device options displays.
- Tap Silent mode from the Device Options screen to activate or deactivate this mode (the current mode displays).

# **Adjusting the Volume Settings**

The Volume menu now provides access to various volume settings within one on-screen popup menu.

- Press → and then tap Settings → Sound
   Volume.
- Touch and drag the on-screen slider to assign the volume settings for any of the following volume levels.
  - Music, video, games, and other media, Ringtone, Notifications or System.
- 3. Tap **0K** to assign the volume levels.

## **Vibration intensity**

Vibration intensity allows you to select how intense the vibration is for different options.

- Press → and then tap Settings → Sound
   Vibration intensity.
- Touch and drag the slider to adjust the Vibration intensity for Incoming call, Notification, and Haptic feedback.
- 3. Tap **0K** to assign the vibration levels.

## **Setup the Voice Call Ringtone**

This option allows you to set the ringtone.

- 1. Press  $\rightarrow$  and then tap Settings  $\rightarrow$  Sound.
- 2. Tap Device ringtone.
- Tap a ringtone from the available list. The ringtone briefly plays when selected.
- 4. Tap OK to assign a ringer.

# **Setup the Device Vibration**

This option allows you to set your device to vibrate and ring.

- . Press  $\rightarrow$   $\rightarrow$  and then tap **Settings**  $\rightarrow$  **Sound**.
- Tap Device vibration.
- 3. Select a vibration pattern and tap **OK**.

# **Setting a Default Notification Ringtone**

This option allows you to set the ringtone that will sound for notifications and alarms.

- Press → and then tap Settings → Sound
   → Default notifications.
- 2. Tap one of the ringtones and tap **OK**.

## **Setting up Sound and Vibration**

This option allows you to adjust the sound and vibration functions.

- 1. Press  $\rightarrow$   $\rightarrow$  and then tap Settings  $\rightarrow$  Sound.
- **2.** Tap the **Sound and vibration** field to activate the feature.

# **Audible System Tone Settings**

These options are used when you use the dialing pad, make a screen selection, lock your screen, or tap the screen. Each time you press a key or make a selection the selected tone sounds.

- 1. Press  $\rightarrow$  and then tap Settings  $\rightarrow$  Sound.
- Tap Keytones to activate a tone when you use onscreen keys. A check mark displayed next to these features indicates active status.
- Tap Touch sounds to activate a tone when you touch the screen. A check mark displayed next to this feature indicates active status.
- Tap Screen lock sound to activate a tone when you use the Lock screen. A check mark displayed next to this feature indicates active status.
- Tap Haptic feedback to activate the a vibration when you press soft keys on certain screens. A check mark displayed next to the feature indicates this feature is active.

Activate Auto haptic to allow your device to automatically vibrate in response to the sounds of downloadable apps, such as games. In a single motion, drag the slider to the right to turn it on ON.

# **Display Settings**

In this menu, you can change various settings for the display such as the font, orientation, pop-up notifications, puzzle lock feature, animation, brightness, screen timeout, and power saving mode.

# **Adjusting the Screen Display**

- 1. Press  $\rightarrow$   $\rightarrow$  and then tap Settings  $\rightarrow$  Display.
- 2. Configure the following screen display settings:
  - Brightness: adjusts the on-screen brightness level. For more information, refer to "Adjusting Screen Brightness" on page 286.
  - Screen timeout: adjusts the delay time before the screen automatically turns off. Selections are: 15 seconds, 30 seconds, 1 minute, 2 minutes, 5 minutes, and 10 minutes.
  - Smart stay: tap this option to disable the screen timeout if your device detects that your face is watching the screen.

- Auto-rotate screen: when enabled, the phone automatically switches from portrait to landscape orientation and vice versa.
   When this setting is disabled, the phone displays in portrait mode only.
- Touch key light duration: to adjust the light duration of the touch keys.
- Font style: sets the fonts used on the LCD display. Selections are: Default font, Choco cooky, Helvetica S, Rosemary, or Get fonts online. Tap Get fonts online to download additional fonts.
- Font size: allows you to select which size of font is displayed.
- Auto adjust screen tone: adjusts the phone's LCD brightness level to automatically adjust and conserve battery power.
- Display battery percentage: to activate/deactivate the display of battery charge percentage atop the battery icon at the top of the screen.
- **Gyroscope calibration**: uses the built-in gyroscope to calibrate motion when the phone is in motion.

## **Adjusting Screen Brightness**

This feature configures the LCD Brightness levels.

- Press → and then tap Settings → Display
   Brightness.
- Tap Automatic brightness to allow the phone to selfadjust and tap OK.
  - or –

Touch and slide the on-screen slider to adjust the level and tap **OK**.

## **Gyro Sensor Calibration**

Calibrate your device by using the built-in gyroscope.

- Press → and then tap Settings → Display
   → Gyroscope calibration.
- Place the phone on a level surface and tap Calibrate.
   The phone adjusts the level of the accelerometer.
   During the calibration process a green circle appears on-screen and the center circle adjusts to the center position.

# **Wallpaper**

The Wallpaper settings option allows you to set the Wallpaper for your Home screen, Lock screen, or both.

- Press → and then tap Settings → Wallpaper.
- 2. Select an available option to change its current wallpaper.

For more information, refer to "Managing Wallpapers" on page 63.

## **LED** Indicator

This option allows you to turn on your LED lights for charging, missed events, and incoming notifications. The light will turn on by default unless you turn them off.

- Press → and then tap Settings → LED indicator.
- Tap the following LED indicator options to turn them on or off:
  - Charging: LED lights up when the device is connected to the charger.
  - Low battery: LED lights up when the battery level is low.

 Missed event: LED lights up when you have missed calls, messages, or application events.

# **Motion Settings**

This feature allows you to assign specific functions to certain phone actions that are detected by both the accelerometer and gyroscope.

#### To activate motion:

Note: If Motion activation is not enabled, all motion services are greyed-out and disabled.

## To activate different motion functions:

- Activate the feature by tapping the Motion activation field.
- 2. Tap the desired on-screen motion option.
  - Direct call: Once enabled, the device will dial the currently displayed on-screen Contact entry as soon as you place the device to your ear.
  - **Smart alert**: Once enabled, pickup the device to be alerted and notified of you have missed any calls or messages.

- **Double tap to top**: Once enabled, double tap the top of the device to be taken to the top of the current on-screen list.
- Tilt to zoom: Once enabled, you must be on a screen where content can be zoomed. In a single motion, touch and hold two points on the display then tilt the device back and forth to zoom in or out.
- Pan to move icon: Once enabled, touch and hold a desired application shortcut icon or widget on the screen. Once it detaches, move the device left or right to migrate it to a new location.
- Pan to browse images: Once enabled, touch and hold a
  desired on-screen image to pan around it. Move the device left
  or right to pan vertically or up and down to pan horizontally
  around the large on-screen image.
- Shake to update: Once enabled, shake your device to rescan for Bluetooth devices, rescan for Wi-Fi devices, Refresh a Web page, etc.
- Turn over to mute/pause: Once enabled, mute incoming calls and any playing sounds by turning the device over display down on a surface. This is the opposite of the pickup to be notified gesture.

- Palm swipe to capture: Once enabled, you can capture any on-screen information swiping across the screen. In a single motion, press the side of your hand on the screen and swipe form left to right. The image is then copied to the clipboard.
- Palm touch to mute/pause: Once enabled, you can pause any on-screen video or mute any current sound by simply covering the screen with your hand. Once you remove your hand from the screen, the device goes back to normal by either continuing to play the current video or unmuting the current sound.

# **Power Saving Mode**

This feature allows you both automatically set the phone to use a power saving mode and configure additional power saving options manually, all in an effort to conserve battery power.

- Press → and then tap Settings → Power saving.
- 2. In a single motion touch and slide the slider to the right to turn it on ON.
- 3. Tap the following options to create a check mark and conserve power:
  - CPU power saving: allows you to limit the maximum performance of the CPU.

- Screen power saving: allows you to lower the screen power level.
- Background color: allows you to change the background color on email and internet to save power.
- Turn off haptic feedback: allows you to turn off vibration when you tap or touch the screen.
- Tap Learn about power saving to learn about various ways to conserve battery power.
- When the power gets low, confirm appears at the top of the screen. This indicates the power saving mode is active.

# **SD Card & Device Storage**

From this menu you can view the memory allocation for the memory card as well as mount or unmount the SD card.

For more information about mounting or unmounting the SD card, see "Using the SD Card" on page 65.

To view the memory allocation for your external SD card:

■ Press → □ and then tap Settings → Storage. The available memory displays under the Total space and SD card headings.

# **Battery Usage**

This option allows you to view a list of those components using battery power. The amount of time the battery was used also displays. Battery usage displays in percentages per application.

- Press and then tap Settings → Battery.
   The battery level displays in percentage.
- 2. From the upper-right tap (Refresh) to update the list.

- or -

Tap an entry to view more detailed information.

**Note:** Other applications may be running that affect battery use.

# **Application Manager**

This device can be used for Android development. You can write applications in the SDK and install them on this device, then run the applications using the hardware, system, and network. This feature allows you to configure the device for development.

Warning! Because the device can be configured with system software not provided by or supported by Google or any other company, end-users operate these devices at their own risk.

This menu allows you to manage installed applications. You can view and control currently running services, or use the device for application development.

You can also view the amount of memory or resources used as well as the remaining memory and resources for each of the applications on your phone and clear the data, cache, or defaults.

Press → and then tap Settings → Application manager → All.

#### **Clearing Application Cache and Data**

**Important!** You must have downloaded applications installed to use this feature.

- Press → □ and then tap Settings →
   Application manager.
- 2. Tap an application in which to clear the cache or data.
- Tap Force stop, Uninstall, Clear data, Clear cache, or Clear defaults.

## **Uninstalling Third-party Applications**

**Important!** You must have downloaded applications installed to use this feature.

- Press → □ and then tap Settings →
   Application manager.
- **2.** Tap the **Downloaded** tab and select your desired application.
- **3.** Tap **Uninstall** (from within the top area of the Application info page).
- **4.** At the prompt, tap **0K** to uninstall the application.

**5.** Select a reason for uninstalling the application, then tap **0K**.

# **Running Services**

The Running services option allows you to view and control currently running services such as Backup, Google Talk, SNS (messaging), Swype, and more.

- Press → □ and then tap Settings → Application manager.
- Tap the Running tab to view all currently active and running applications. This tab also shows the total RAM being used by these currently active applications.
- Tap a process and select Stop to end the process and stop it from running. When you stop the process the service or application will no longer run until you start the process or application again.
- Tap Show cached processes to view additional cached applications.

**Important!** Stopping a process might have undesirable consequences on the application.

## Storage Used

This option allows you to view a list (on the current tab) of current applications as sorted by size.

- Press → and then tap Settings → Application manager.
- 2. Tap the All tab to display all available applications.
- Press and then tap Sort by size to change the current list to show items based on the amount of storage they occupy.

# **Accounts and Synchronization**

Your phone provides the ability to synchronize data from a variety of different sources or sites. These accounts can range from Google, a Corporate Microsoft Exchange Email Server, and other social sites such as Facebook, and Twitter. Corporate and Google accounts provide the ability to synchronize Calendar events and Contacts.

#### To activate Accounts and sync

- Press → and then tap Settings → Account and sync.
- 2. In a single motion touch and slide the **Accounts and** sync slider to the right to turn it on ON.

#### To deactivate Accounts and sync

- Press → and then tap Settings → Account and sync.
- 2. In a single motion touch and slide the Accounts and sync slider to the left to turn it off OFF...

# Synchronizing a All Account

By default, all managed accounts are synchronized. You can also manually sync all current accounts.

- Press → and then tap Settings → Account and sync.
- 2. Tap Sync all.

# **Synchronizing a Google Account**

To add a new Google account:

- Press → and then tap Settings → Accounts and sync.
- 2. Tap Add account → Google → Existing.

Note: If you do not already have a Google account, tap Create and follow the on-screen prompts to create your new account.

- Tap the Email (@gmail.com) and Password fields and enter your information.
- 4. Tap Sign in. Your phone then communicates with the Google servers to confirm your information. Your existing Gmail account then appears within the Manage accounts area of the screen.
  - Any changes or updates to your Gmail account are then automatically updated to your device.

## To configure the Google management settings:

- Press → and then tap Settings →
   Accounts and sync.
- **2.** Tap within the Google account field to reveal the account's synchronization settings screen.
- **3.** Tap the parameters you wish to synchronize. A green check mark indicates the feature is enabled.
- Tap Sync now to synchronize those enabled parameters.
- Press to return to the previous screen.
   For more information, refer to "Synchronizing Contacts" on page 117.

# **Synchronizing Your Corporate Account**

By default, there are no Corporate Calendar events managed by the device. These must be manually added.

**Note:** Once a corporate email account is created, it is automatically added as a managed account.

Use the following procedure to configure your phone to synchronize with a corporate email account.

- From the Home screen, tap (Applications)→
   Settings → Accounts and sync.
  - or -

Press  $\rightarrow$   $\rightarrow$  and then tap **Settings**  $\rightarrow$  **Accounts and sync**.

- 2. Locate and tap the corporate email account.
- Tap within the adjacent account field to reveal the account's synchronization settings screen.
- Place a check mark adjacent to those events you wish to manually sync.
- Tap Sync now to synchronize those enabled parameters.
- **6.** Press **5** to return to the previous screen.

## **Location Services**

The Location services allows you to configure the device's location services.

Important! The more location determining functions are enabled, the more accurate the determination will be of your position.

# **Using Wireless Networks**

Before you use applications such as Google Maps and find your location or search for places of interest, you must enable the Use wireless networks option.

- Press → Location and then tap Settings → Location services.
- Tap Use wireless networks allows apps to use data from sources such as Wi-Fi and mobile networks to provide a better approximation of your current location.

# **Enabling the GPS Satellites**

- Press → and then tap Settings → Location services.
- 2. Tap Use GPS satellites to enable the GPS satellite.

# **Enabling the Location and Google Search**

- Press → and then tap Settings → Location services
- Tap Location and Google search to enable the GPS satellite.

Tip: When using Google Maps you can turn on Location and Google search. Enabling this feature allows you to locate places of interest at the street-level. However, this also requires a clear view of the sky and uses more battery power.

# **Security and Lock Screen**

This menu contains features that allows you to configure the device's security parameters.

#### Screen Unlock Pattern Overview

To secure data and limit phone access, set the phone to require a screen unlock pattern each time you turn on the device, or every time the phone wakes up from sleep mode (when the screen automatically turns off).

The Screen lock menu allows to choose from a variety of locking features such as: None, Swipe, Motion, Face, Face and voice, Pattern, PIN, and Password.

## **Using Swipe**

This feature is the least secure locking method and only requires that a user swipe the screen to unlock the device.

- Press → I and then tap Settings → Security and lock screen.
- 2. Tap Screen lock → Swipe.

# **Using a Motion to Unlock**

This feature allows you to lock or unlock your device by simply tilting it and moving it either forwards or backwards.

- Press → Image and then tap Settings → Security and lock screen.
- Tap Screen lock → Motion → OK.

#### To unlock a device with motion:

- 1. Verify the device is on and on the Lock screen.
- In a single motion, use your thumb to touch and hold the Lock screen, then quickly tilt the device towards you.

Note: If you forget, these instructions appear at the bottom of the Lock screen.

## **Using Face Unlock**

This feature used facial recognition to unlock your phone. This feature is less secure than PIN, Pattern, and Password locks and can be bypassed by someone else who looks similar to vou.

- Press → □ and then tap Settings → Security and lock screen.
- Tap Screen lock → Face.
- 3. Read the on-screen notification and tap Set it up.
- Follow the on-screen instructions.

# **Using Face and Voice Unlock**

This feature used facial recognition to unlock your phone. This feature is less secure than PIN, Pattern, and Password locks and can be bypassed by someone else who looks similar to you.

- Press → □ and then tap Settings → Security and lock screen.
- Tap Screen lock → Face and voice.
- 3. Read the on-screen notification and tap Set it up.
- Follow the on-screen instructions.

- 5. Once prompted to speak and unlock command, tap and repeat the phrase four times.
- **6.** Once complete, tap **Done**.

# Setting an Unlock Pattern

Creating a screen unlock pattern increases security on the phone. When you enable the User visible pattern field, you will draw an unlock pattern on the screen whenever you want to unlock the phone's buttons or touch screen. When you activate the User tactile feedback field, you feel vibration as feedback while drawing the pattern.

The feature is now paired with a backup PIN code that acts as a backup to the pattern lock. If you forget your pattern, you can regain access to the device by entering a PIN code.

Note: Make sure the Require Pattern field is activated.

- Press → □ and then tap Settings → Security and lock screen.
- Tap Screen lock → Pattern.
- 3. Read the instructions then tap **Next**.

- Review the on-screen animation procedure for drawing a pattern and tap Next when you are ready to draw a pattern.
- 5. Draw your pattern by touching your first on-screen point. Then, without removing your finger from the screen, drag your finger over adjacent points until the gray trace line overlaps each point and they are highlighted with a green circle.
- 6. When you have connected at least four dots in a vertical, horizontal or diagonal direction, lift your finger from the screen and tap Continue.
- **7.** Confirm the new pattern by redrawing it and then tapping **Confirm**. The Unlock pattern is set.
- 8. Enter the backup PIN code and tap Continue.
- Reenter the PIN to reconfirm the previous entry and tap OK.

## **Changing the Screen Lock Pattern**

This feature allows you to change the previously stored unlock pattern and update it if necessary. This process is similar to changing your password from time to time.

- 2. Tap Screen lock.
- 3. Retrace your current pattern on the screen.
- Tap Pattern and repeat steps 3 7 from the previous section.

## **Deleting the Screen Lock Pattern**

- Press → I and then tap Settings → Security and lock screen.
- Tap Screen lock.
- 3. Retrace your current pattern on the screen.
- Tap None.

#### **PIN Lock and Unlock**

- Press → and then tap Settings → Security
   and lock screen.
- Tap Screen lock → PIN.
- Enter a PIN number using the numeric keypad and touch Continue to confirm the password.
- Confirm the PIN by re-entering it and tap **0K** to confirm.
   Your phone now requires you to enter this PIN number in order to unlock the phone.

## **Password Lock and Unlock**

- Press → and then tap Settings → Security and lock screen.
- Tap Screen lock.
- Tap Password.
- Enter a password using the keypad and tap Continue to confirm the password.
- Confirm the password by re-entering it and tap **OK** to confirm.

## **Samsung Unlock Options**

Activate or deactivates various Unlock screen functions.

- Press → and then tap Settings → Security and lock screen → Lock screen options.
- 2. Tap Lock screen options and choose from:
  - Shortcuts sets shortcuts to appear at the bottom of the Lock screen.
  - Information ticker sets the news and stock information ticker to appear across the bottom of the Lock screen.
  - Camera quick access provides you with quick access to the camera function from the Lock screen. When active, in a single motion,
  - Clock allows you to display the digital clock while the Lock screen is active. Enabled by default.
  - Dual clock displays a set of dual digital clock on the Lock screen while you are traveling. Tap the entry to set your home city. This time zone then becomes the time used by one of these on-screen clocks.
  - Weather displays the current area weather on the Lock screen.
     Tap and set both the temperature units (F or C) and a refresh time.

- Ripple effect activates/deactivates the ripple effect on the lock screen when you tap it.
- **Help text** shows help information on the Lock screen.
- Wake up in lock screen requires that you say a command to wake-up S Voice.
- Set wake-up command designates your S Voice wake-up commands. Tap Wake-up S Voice and follow the on-screen promots to create a new verbal command.

**Note:** These options vary depending on the selected Lock settings.

## Using a Visible Pattern

When the **Make pattern visible** option is enabled, the device displays the on-screen lock grid that is used for unlocking.

**Note:** This option only appears when a screen lock option is active.

## **Locking Automatically**

This option allows you to define the amount of time that must pass before the device can automatically lock on its own.

**Note:** This option only appears when a screen lock option is active.

# **Lock with Power Key**

When enabled, the screen is automatically locked after pressing the Power/Lock key.

**Note:** This option only appears when a screen lock option is active.

# Vibrate on Screen Tap

When enabled, you will feel vibration as feedback while drawing the pattern, using a PIN or password lock.

**Note:** This option only appears when a screen lock option is active.

#### **Owner Information**

This option allows you to show user-defined information on the Lock screen.

- Press and then tap Settings → Security and lock screen → Owner information.
- Tap the Show owner info on lock screen checkbox to create a checkmark if you want your owner information displayed.
- Enter text that you would like displayed on your Lock screen.
- Press twice to save the new text and return to the previous screen.

# **Encrypt Device**

When enabled, this feature requires a password be used to decrypt the device each time you turn it on.

# Encrypt SD Card

When enabled, this feature requires a password be used to decrypt the microSD card each time it is connected.

## **Setting up SIM Card Lock**

Prevent another user from using your micro SIM card to make unauthorized calls or from accessing information stored on your SIM card by protecting the information using a PIN code.

- Press → Image and then tap Settings → Security and lock screen.
- Tap Set up SIM card lock.
- Tap Lock SIM card, enter your SIM PIN code, then tap 0K.

Note: You must activate Lock SIM card before you can change your SIM PIN code.

#### To change an existing SIM Card PIN:

- 1. Tap Change SIM PIN.
- 2. Enter the old SIM PIN code and tap **0K**.
- 3. Enter the new SIM PIN code and tap **OK**.
- 4. Re-type the new SIM PIN code and tap **0K**.

## **Password Settings**

When you create a phone password you can also configure the phone to display the password as you type it instead of using an asterisk (\*).

- 2. Tap Make passwords visible to activate this feature.

#### **Device Administration**

Activating this feature allows Google to administrate your phone in a way similar to IT security settings on a corporate PC. This would be beneficial in the case that your phone was lost or stolen. The phone could be "deactivated" or

"restricted" (through administration) from a remote location.

- Press → Image and then tap Settings → Security and lock screen.
- **2.** Tap **Device administrators** to begin configuring this setting.
- 3. Select an administrator device and follow the prompts.

#### Unknown Sources

Before you can download a web application you must enable the Unknown sources feature (enables downloading). Developers can use this option to install non-Play Store applications.

- Press → □ and then tap Settings → Security and lock screen.
- 2. Tap Unknown sources to active this feature.

Note: If you are notified that you can not download a Play Store application because it comes from an "Unknown source", enabling this option corrects this issue.

## **Credential Storage**

This option allows certain applications to access secure certificates and other credentials. Certificates and credentials can be installed to the SD card and password protected.

- Press → I and then tap Settings → Security
   and lock screen
- Tap Trusted credentials to display only trusted CA certificates. A check mark displayed next to the feature indicates secure credentials.
- Tap Install from device storage to install encrypted certificates from the USB Storage location.
- Tap Clear credentials to clear the device (SD card or phone memory) of all certificate contents and reset the credentials password.

# **Language and Input Settings**

This setting allows you to configure the language in which to display the menus. You can also set on-screen keyboard options.

■ Press → and then tap Settings → Language and input.

## **Language Settings**

To set the language that the menus display on the phone:

- Press → and then tap Settings →
   Language and input → Language.
- 2. Select a language and region from the list.

# **Select Input Method**

- Press → and then tap Settings → Language and input → Default.
- 2. Select an input method.
  - or -

Tap **Configure input methods** to alter/modify the available input methods.

## **Samsung Keyboard Settings**

- 1. Press → □ and then tap Settings →

  Language and input → (adjacent to the Samsung keyboard field).
  - or -

From within an active text entry screen, touch and hold (Input Methods), drag across the icons, and select (Settings) to reveal the Samsung keyboard settings screen.

- 2. Set any of the following options:
  - Portrait keypad types allows you to choose a keypad configuration (Qwerty Keypad [default] or 3x4 keyboard).

- Input language sets the input language. Tap a language from the available list. The keyboard is updated to the selected language.
- Predictive text enables predictive text entry mode. This must be enabled to gain access to the advanced settings. Touch and hold to access the advanced settings.
- My words list allows you to add new words to the built-in predictive text dictionary.
  - Tap (Add word) and use the keyboard to enter the new word.
  - Tap **Done** to store the new word.
- T9 Trace like using Swipe, allows you to type words by swyping between on-screen keys.
- Handwriting enables the device to recognize on-screen handwriting and convert it to text.
- Voice input activates the Voice input feature. This is an experimental feature that uses Google's networked speech recognition application.
- Auto capitalization automatically capitalizes the first letter of the first word in each sentence (standard English style).

- Auto-punctuate automatically inserts a full stop in a sentence by tapping the space bar twice when using the on-screen QWERTY keyboard.
- Character preview provides an automatic preview of the current character selection within the text string. This is helpful when multiple characters are available within one key.
- Key-tap vibration enables vibration feedback when you tap an on-screen key.
- Key-tap sound enables auditory feedback when you tap an on-screen key.
- **Tutorial** launches a brief on-screen tutorial covering the main concepts related to the Samsung keyboard.
- Reset settings resets the keyboard settings back to their original configuration.

# **Predictive Text - Advanced Settings**

The predictive text system provides next-letter prediction and regional error correction, which compensates for users pressing the wrong keys on QWERTY keyboards.

Press → and then tap Settings →
 Language and input → (adjacent to the Samsung keyboard field).

#### - or -

From within an active text entry screen, touch and hold (Input Methods), drag across the icons, and select (Settings) to reveal the Samsung keyboard settings screen.

- 2. In a single motion touch and slide the **Predictive text** slider to the right to turn it on ON.
- 3. Tap the Predictive text field and configure any of the following advanced options:
  - Word completion tells your device to attempt to predict how to complete the word you have started. (A green check mark indicates the feature is enabled.)
  - Word completion point sets how many letters should be entered before a word prediction is made. Choose from 2 letters, 3 letters, 4 letters, or 5 letters.
  - Spell correction enables the automatic correction of typographical errors by selecting from a list of possible words that reflect both the characters of the keys you touched, and those of nearby characters. (A green check mark indicates the feature is enabled.)

- Next word prediction predicts the next word you are like to enter. (A green check mark indicates the feature is enabled.)
- Auto-append automatically adds predictions to the word you are typing. (A green check mark indicates the feature is enabled.)
- Auto-substitution allows the device to automatically replace misspelled or miskeyed words. This option reduce "typos." (A green check mark indicates the feature is enabled.)
- Regional correction automatically tries to correct errors caused when you tap keys adjacent to the correct keys. (A green check mark indicates the feature is enabled.
- Recapture sets the device to redisplay the word suggestion list after selecting the wrong word from the list.
- Auto substitution list allows you to create a word rule by adding words for automatic substitution during text entry (for example youve becomes you've).
  - Scroll up or down to review the current list of word substitutions.
  - Tap (Add word).
  - Enter the original word that will be replaced in the **Shortcut** field (for example, youve).

- Enter the substitute word that will be used in the **Substitution** field (for example, you?fve).
- Tap **Done** to save the substitution rule.
- 4. Press 🗲 to return to the previous screen.

# **Configure Google Voice Typing**

Press → and then tap Settings → Language and input.

- or -

From a screen where you can enter text, in a single motion, touch and drag the Status bar down to the bottom of the screen, then select (Select input method) -> Configure input methods.

- 2. Tap (adjacent to the Google voice typing field).
- Select a language by tapping Select input languages area.
- **4.** Remove the check mark from the **Automatic** field. This allows you to select additional languages.
- **5.** Select the desired languages.
- Activate Block offensive words to block recognition of known offensive words or language. (A green check mark indicates the feature is active).

# **Configuring Voice Input Controls**

This feature allows you to use pre-defined voice commands to control various features on your device. Actions include: Incoming calls, Alarm, Camera, and Music.

- Press → □ and then tap Settings → Language and input.
- In a single motion touch and slide the Voice cmd for apps slider to the right to turn it on ON.
- Read the Voice input control disclaimer about restricting volume for event alerts and tap OK.
- Tap the Voice cmd for apps field. Enabling an option in this menu activates its voice control functionality.
- Tap Incoming call to activate a voice control for answering or rejecting an incoming call.
  - Answer an incoming call by clearly saying "Answer".
  - Reject an incoming call by clearly saying "Reject".
- Tap Alarm to activate a voice control for stopping or snoozing an active alarm event.
  - **Stop** an alarm for continuing to sound by clearly saying "Stop".
  - Snooze an alarm until the next reminder interval by clearly saying "Snooze".

- **7.** Tap **Camera** to activate a voice control that allows you to verbally take a new picture.
  - Take a new photo by clearly saying either "Capture", "Shoot", "Smile", or "Cheese".
- Tap Music to activate a voice control that allows you to verbally control music playback within the Music Player app (page 218). Commands include: Next, Previous, Play, Pause, Volume up, and Volume down.

Note: Voice control for music is only available when using the Music player application. THis control is not available on Play Music.

## **Speech Settings**

This menu allows you to set the speech settings for Voice input.

- Press → □ and then tap Settings → Language and input.
- Tap Voice recognizer and select either Google or Samsung powered by Vlingo as your Voice recognition engine.
- 3. Tap Voice search to configure:

# **Configuring Voice Input Recognition**

This feature allows the device to correctly recognize verbal input.

- Press → □ and then tap Settings → Language and input → Voice search.
- Configure the available options to alter the settings associated with this feature:
  - Language: selects an input language and associated dialect recognition (if available).
  - SafeSearch: sets the explicit image filter settings. These settings apply to only Google voice search results. Choose from: Off. Moderate, or Strict.
  - Block offensive words: allows you to block recognition of known offensive words or language. (A green check mark indicates the feature is active).
- 3. Press to return to the previous screen.

## **Configuring Text-to-speech**

This feature allows the device to provide a verbal readout of on-screen data such as messages and incoming caller information. This action is called TTS (Text To Speech).

- Press → and then tap Settings →
   Language and input → Text-to-speech output.
- Select a current Preferred TTS engine from the list of available options. The default is Google Text-tospeech.
- 3. Tap to configure the engine's settings.
- **4.** Configure the General options to alter the settings associated with this feature:
  - Speech rate: adjusts the rate at which on-screen text is spoken by the device. Choose from: Very slow, Slow, Normal, Fast, and Very fast.
  - Listen to an example: plays a short example of what the textto-speech feature sounds like on your device when activated.

- Driving mode: incoming calls and new notifications are automatically ready out loud. In a single motion touch and slide
   OFF to the right to turn it on.
  - Once active, tap the Driving mode field to reveal the associated settings.
  - Select those applications that will use TTS while driving mode is activated. Choose from: Incoming call, Message, New emails, New voicemail, Alarm, Schedule, or Unlock screen.

## Configuring the Mouse-TrackPad

This feature allows you to configure the pointer speed for the mouse/trackpad.

- Press → and then tap Settings →
   Language and input → Pointer speed.
- 2. Adjust the slider and tap **OK**.

# **Back up and Reset**

Location settings, backup configurations, or reset the phone to erase all personal data.

■ Press and then tap Settings → Backup and reset.

# Mobile Backup and Restore

The device can be configured to back up your current settings, application data and settings.

- Press → Backup and reset.
- Tap Back up my data to create a backup of your current phone settings and applications.
- Tap Backup account to assign the account being backed up.
- Tap Automatic restore to assist in the re-installation of a previously installed application (including preferences and data).
- Tap Factory data reset to reset your device and sound settings to the factory default settings. For more information, refer to "Factory Data Reset" on page 309.

 Tap Collect diagnostics to collects diagnostic data for troubleshooting use. For more information, refer to "Collect Diagnostics" on page 309.

# Prior to doing a Factory Reset

Before initiating a factory reset, it is recommended that you backup your personal data prior to use.

#### To export a Contact list to your microSD card:

- 1. From the Home screen, tap (Contacts).
- Press and then tap Import/Export.
- Tap Export to SD card → OK. For more information, refer to "Export/Import" on page 120.

## Verify your images and videos are on your microSD card:

- From the Home screen, tap (Applications) → (Gallery).
- Verify the Gallery contains all of your pictures and videos.
- Remove both the back cover and remove the internal microSD card prior to initiating the process.

## **Factory Data Reset**

From this menu you can reset your device and sound settings to the factory default settings.

- Press → and then tap Settings → Backup and reset → Factory data reset.
- 2. Read the on-screen reset information.
- 3. Tap Reset device.
- If necessary, enter your password and tap Delete all.
   The device resets to the factory default settings automatically and when finished displays the Home screen.

# **Collect Diagnostics**

This feature only collects diagnostic data for troubleshooting use.

- Press → and then tap Settings → Backup and reset → Collect diagnostics.
- Read the on-screen System Manager Application information.

Note: This software collects only diagnostic data from your device so that T-Mobile technicians can better troubleshoot issues with your device.

- Choose to enable or disable the feature by placing a check mark in the Allow Diagnostics field.
- Select either More Info.. (to read additional information) or Close to close the message screen.

Important! Selecting Close only closes the current description scree and does not disable data collection.

To disable data collection, go to Settings → Backup and reset → Collect diagnostics and turn off the Allow Diagnostics feature.

## **Accessory**

This menu allows you to assign external speakers when the device is docked.

- Press → and then tap Settings → Accessory.
- Tap Dock sound to play sounds when inserting or removing the phone from the dock.
- Tap Audio output mode to use the external dock speakers when the phone is docked.
- Tap Desk home screen display to display the desk home screen when the phone is docked.
- Tap Audio output to set your Audio output to Stereo or Surround.
- Tap Audio applications to create a checkmark if you want to enable audio applications in the quick panel.

## **Date and Time**

This menu allows you to change the current time and date displayed.

- Press → and then tap Settings → Date and time.
- **2.** Tap **Automatic data and time** to allow the network set the date and time.

**Important!** Deactivate **Automatic data and time** to manually set the rest of the options.

- Tap Set date and use the plus or minus icons to set the Month, Day, and Year then tap Set.
- Tap Set time and use the plus or minus icons, set Hour, and Minute. Tap PM or AM, then tap Set.
- **5.** Tap **Automatic time zone** to allow the network set the time zone information automatically.
- **6.** Tap **Select time zone**, then tap a time zone.
- Tap Use 24-hour format. If this is not selected the device automatically uses a 12-hour format.
- **8.** Tap **Select date format** and select the date format type.

# **Accessibility Settings**

This service lets you enable and disable downloaded accessibility applications that aid in navigating your Android device, such as TalkBack (uses synthesized speech to describe the results of actions), KickBack (provides haptic feedback for actions), and SoundBack (plays sounds for various actions). Also lets you enable use of the power key to end calls.

Press → and then tap Settings →
 Accessibility.

**Note:** Initially, it might be necessary to download accessibility applications from the Play Store.

- Select the Auto-rotate screen field to activate this feature which automatically rotates an available screen.
- Select the Speak passwords field to activate this feature which reads out password information.
- Select the Call answering/ending field to activate this feature which uses either Any key to answer incoming calls or the to end any current calls.

- Tap Accessibility shortcut to allow the accessibility shortcut under the device options to be used by pressing and holding the power key.
- Tap Screen timeout to timeout the accessibility feature after a defined amount of time.
- Tap Lock automatically to lock the screen automatically after a selected amount of time.

**Note:** The Lock automatically function is only available if your device is already using the screen lock feature.

Tap TalkBack to activate the feature.

**Note:** TalkBack, when installed and enabled, speaks feedback to help blind and low-vision users.

Important! TalkBack can collect all of the text you enter, except passwords, including personal data and credit card numbers. It may also log your user interface interactions with the device.

- Tap the Install Web scripts → Allow to activate/ deactivate the feature which allows some applications to install scripts from Google that makes the Web site's content more accessible.
- 10. Tap the Negative colors field to reverse the display of on-screen colors from White text on a Black background to Black text on a White background.
- 11. Tap the Font Size field to change the size of the fonts used on the device within menus, options, etc.. Choose from: Tiny, Small, Normal, Large, or Huge.
- 12. Tap the Mono audio field to enable stereo audio to be compressed into a single mono audio stream for use with a single earbud/earphone.
- 13. Tap the Turn off all sounds field to mute every sound made by the device during taps, selections, notifications, etc..
- 14. Tap the Tap and hold delay field to select a time interval for this action. Choose from: Short, Medium, or Long.

# **Developer Options**

Use the Developer options to set options for application development.

■ Press → □ and then tap Settings → Developer options.

Important! These features are used for development purposes only.

## **USB Debugging**

When enabled, allows debugging when the device is attached to a PC by a USB cable.

- Press → and then tap Settings → Developer options.
- Tap USB debugging to enable or disable the setting.When enabled, a check mark appears in the check box.

## **Development device ID**

The identification number for your device when using it as a development tool displays in this field.

# **Allowing Mock Locations**

Note: This feature is used for development purposes only.

If you are a developer who is testing a GPS applications using this device, you can tell the device that the phone is at different GPS locations. In other words, the phone is allowed to "mock" the coordinates.

- Press → and then tap Settings → Developer options.
- Tap Allow mock locations to enable or disable the setting. When enabled, a check mark appears in the check box.

## **Desktop Backup Password**

Protect the desktop with a backup password ID.

- Press → and then tap Settings → Developer options.
- 2. Tap Desktop backup password.
- In the Settings screen, enter the current full backup password, the new password for full backups, then enter the new password again.

Tap Set backup password to save the password change.

## **User Interface Options**

Configure the user interface by setting the behavior for the way the screen behaves when using applications or displaying data.

- Press → and then tap Settings → Developer options.
- **2.** Tap the check box next to each option to enable:
  - Strict mode: Makes the screen flash when applications perform long operations on the main thread.
  - **Show pointer location**: Highlights the data that was touched on the screen.
  - **Show touches**: Displays touch interactions on the screen.
  - Show screen updates: Areas of the screen flash when they update.
  - Show CPU usage: Screen highlights the current CPU usage.
  - Force GPU rendering: Uses a 2D acceleration in applications.
  - **Window animation scale**: Configure the scale for animation (ranges from off to 10x).

• Transition animation scale: Configure the scale for transitioning when using animation (ranges from off to 10x).

# **Application Options**

- Press → and then tap Settings →
   Developer options.
- **2.** Tap **Do not keep activities** to destroy every activity as soon as the application is closed.
- Tap Limit background processes to set the number of processes that can run in the background. Options are: Standard limit, No background processes, and 1 to 4 processes at most.
- Tap Show all ANRs to display a prompt when applications running in the background are not responding.

# **Google Search Settings**

Use Google Search to search the Web.

- 1. Press  $\rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  and then tap  $\bigcirc$  (Search).
- 2. Press 
  → Settings.
- 3. Tap any of the following search parameters to then alter the settings:
  - Google Search opens a screen where you can set your Google search preferences.
    - Google Account: provides a list of current Google accounts configured on the device.
    - Use Web History: includes search matches from Google's online search engine.
    - Manage Web History: helps to manage the personalized search history associated with your current registered Google account.
    - Clear on-device search history: erases the history for recently selected search results.
    - Use My Location: uses your My Location information for Google search results and services.
    - Terms of Service: displays the applications' service terms.

 Open Source Licenses: displays the applications' open source license information.

## **About Device**

This menu contains legal information, system tutorial information, and other phone information such as the model number, firmware version, baseband version, kernel version, and software build number.

## To access phone information:

- Press → □ and then tap Settings → About device. The following information displays:
  - Software update: allows you to connect to the network and upload any new phone software directly to your device. The device automatically updates with the latest available software when you access this option.
  - Status: displays the battery status, the level of the battery (percentage), the network connection, signal strength, mobile network type, service state, roaming status, mobile network state, My phone number, ERI version, IMEI number, IMEI SV, IP address, Wi-Fi MAC address, Bluetooth address, Serial number, Up time, and Device status.

Legal information: This option displays information about
Open source licenses, License settings, as well as Google legal
information. This information clearly provides copyright and
distribution legal information and facts as well as Google Terms
of Service, Terms of Service for Android-powered Phones, and
much more pertinent information as a reference.
 Read the information and terms, then press to return to
the Settings menu.

Tip: To find your device's DivX<sup>®</sup> registration code and information about registering your device to play DivX protected video, tap License settings → DivX® VOD.

- Model number: displays the device's model number.
- Android version: displays the firmware version loaded on this device.
- Baseband version: displays the baseband version loaded on this device.
- Kernel version: displays the kernel version loaded on this device.
- Build number: displays the software, build number.

Note: Firmware, baseband, kernel and build numbers are usually used for updates to the handset or support. For additional information please contact your T-Mobile service representative.

# **Section 13: Health and Safety Information**

This section outlines the safety precautions associated with using your phone. The terms "mobile device" or "cell phone" are used in this section to refer to your phone. Read this information before using your mobile device.

# **Exposure to Radio Frequency (RF) Signals**

The U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) has published information for consumers relating to Radio Frequency (RF) exposure from wireless phones. The FDA publication includes the following information:

# Do cell phones pose a health hazard?

Many people are concerned that cell phone radiation will cause cancer or other serious health hazards. The weight of scientific evidence has not linked cell phones with any health problems.

Cell phones emit low levels of Radio Frequency (RF) energy. Over the past 15 years, scientists have conducted hundreds of studies looking at the biological effects of the radio frequency energy emitted by cell phones. While some researchers have reported biological changes associated with RF energy, these studies have failed to be replicated. The majority of studies published have failed to show an association between exposure to radio frequency from a cell phone and health problems.

The low levels of RF cell phones emit while in use are in the microwave frequency range. They also emit RF at substantially reduced time intervals when in the stand-by mode. Whereas high levels of RF can produce health effects (by heating tissue), exposure to low level RF that does not produce heating effects causes no known adverse health effects.

The biological effects of radio frequency energy should not be confused with the effects from other types of electromagnetic energy.

Very high levels of electromagnetic energy, such as is found in X-rays and gamma rays, can ionize biological tissues. Ionization is a process where electrons are stripped away from their normal locations in atoms and molecules. It can permanently damage biological tissues including DNA, the genetic material.

The energy levels associated with radio frequency energy, including both radio waves and microwaves, are not great enough to cause ionization of atoms and molecules. Therefore, RF energy is a type of non-ionizing radiation. Other types of non-ionizing radiation include visible light, infrared radiation (heat), and other forms of electromagnetic radiation with relatively low frequencies.

While RF energy does not ionize particles, large amounts can increase body temperatures and cause tissue damage. Two areas of the body, the eyes and the testes, are particularly vulnerable to RF heating because there is relatively little blood flow in them to carry away excess heat.

# Research Results to Date: Is there a connection between RF and certain health problems?

The results of most studies conducted to date say no. In addition, attempts to replicate and confirm the few studies that have shown a connection have failed.

The scientific community at large therefore believes that the weight of scientific evidence does not show an association between exposure to Radio Frequency (RF) from cell phones and adverse health outcomes. Still the scientific community has supported additional research to address gaps in knowledge. Some of these studies are described below.

## **Interphone Study**

Interphone is a large international study designed to determine whether cell phones increase the risk of head and neck cancer. A report published in the International Journal of Epidemiology (June, 2010) compared cell phone usage for more than 5,000 people with brain tumors (glioma and meningioma) and a similar number of healthy controls.

Results of this study did NOT show that cell phones caused brain cancer. In this study, most people had no increased risk of brain cancer from using cell phones. For people with the heaviest use of cell phones (an average of more than ½ hour per day, every day, for over 10 years) the study suggested a slight increase in brain cancer. However, the authors determined that biases and errors prevented any conclusions being drawn from this data. Additional information about Interphone can be found at

http://www.iarc.fr/en/media-centre/pr/2010/pdfs/pr200\_E.pdf.

Interphone is the largest cell phone study to date, but it did not answer all questions about cell phone safety. Additional research is being conducted around the world, and the FDA continues to monitor developments in this field.

## International Cohort Study on Mobile Phone Users (COSMOS)

The COSMOS study aims to conduct long-term health monitoring of a large group of people to determine if there are any health issues linked to long-term exposure to radio frequency energy from cell phone use. The COSMOS study will follow approximately 300,000 adult cell phone users in Europe for 20 to 30 years. Additional information about the COSMOS study can be found at

http://www.ukcosmos.org/index.html.

## Risk of Brain Cancer from Exposure to Radio Frequency Fields in Childhood and Adolescence (MOBI-KIDS)

MOBI-KIDS is an international study investigating the relationship between exposure to radio frequency energy from communication technologies including cell phones and brain cancer in young people. This is an international multi-center study involving 14 European and non-European countries. Additional information about MOBI-KIDS can be found at

http://www.creal.cat/programes-recerca/en\_projectes-creal/view.php?ID=39.

## Surveillance, Epidemiology, and End Results (SEER) Program of the National Cancer Institute

The National Cancer Institute (NCI) actively follows cancer statistics in the United States to detect any change in rates of new cases for brain cancer. If cell phones play a role in risk for brain cancer, rates should go up, because heavy cell phone use has been common for quite some time in the U.S. Between 1987 and 2005, the overall age-adjusted incidence of brain cancer did not increase. Additional information about SEER can be found at

http://seer.cancer.gov/.

## **Cell Phone Industry Actions**

Although the existing scientific data do not justify FDA regulatory actions, the FDA has urged the cell phone industry to take a number of steps, including the following:

- Support-needed research on possible biological effects of RF for the type of signal emitted by cell phones;
- Design cell phones in a way that minimizes any RF exposure to the user: and
- Cooperate in providing users of cell phones with the current information on cell phone use and human health concerns.

The FDA also is working with voluntary standard-setting bodies such as the Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers (IEEE), the International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection (ICNIRP), and others to assure that safety standards continue to adequately protect the public.

## Reducing Exposure: Hands-Free Kits and Other Accessories

## Steps to Reduce Exposure to Radio Frequency Energy

If there is a risk from being exposed to radio frequency energy (RF) from cell phones - and at this point we do not know that there is - it is probably very small. But, if you are concerned about avoiding even potential risks, you can take a few simple steps to minimize your RF exposure.

- Reduce the amount of time spent using your cell phone;
- Use speaker mode or a headset to place more distance between your head and the cell phone.

#### **Hands-Free Kits**

Hands-free kits may include audio or Bluetooth® headsets and various types of body-worn accessories such as belt-clips and holsters. Combinations of these can be used to reduce RF energy absorption from cell phones.

Headsets can substantially reduce exposure because the phone is held away from the head in the user's hand or in approved body-worn accessories. Cell phones marketed in the U.S. are required to meet RF exposure compliance requirements when used against the head and against the body.

Because there are no known risks from exposure to RF emissions from cell phones, there is no reason to believe that hands-free kits reduce risks. Hands-free kits can be used for convenience and comfort. They are also required by law in many states if you want to use your phone while driving.

## Cell Phone Accessories that Claim to Shield the Head from RF Radiation

Because there are no known risks from exposure to RF emissions from cell phones, there is no reason to believe that accessories which claim to shield the head from those emissions reduce risks. Some products that claim to shield the user from RF absorption use special phone cases, while others involve nothing more than a metallic accessory attached to the phone.

Studies have shown that these products generally do not work as advertised. Unlike "hands-free" kits, these so-called "shields" may interfere with proper operation of the phone. The phone may be forced to boost its power to compensate, leading to an increase in RF absorption.

### **Children and Cell Phones**

The scientific evidence does not show a danger to any users of cell phones from RF exposure, including children and teenagers. The steps adults can take to reduce RF exposure apply to children and teenagers as well.

- · Reduce the amount of time spent on the cell phone;
- Use speaker mode or a headset to place more distance between the head and the cell phone.

Some groups sponsored by other national governments have advised that children be discouraged from using cell phones at all. For example, The Stewart Report from the United Kingdom made such a recommendation in December 2000. In this report, a group of independent experts noted that no evidence exists that using a cell phone causes brain tumors or other ill effects. Their recommendation to limit cell phone use by children was strictly precautionary; it was not based on scientific evidence that any health hazard exists.

Additional information on the safety of RF exposures from various sources can be obtained from the following organizations (updated 10/1/2010):

- FCC RF Safety Program: http://www.fcc.gov/oet/rfsafetv/.
- Environmental Protection Agency (EPA): http://www.epa.gov/radtown/wireless-tech.html.
- Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA): <a href="http://www.osha.gov/SLTC/radiofrequencyradiation/">http://www.osha.gov/SLTC/radiofrequencyradiation/</a>. (Note: This web address is case sensitive.)
- National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH): http://www.cdc.gov/niosh/.
- World Health Organization (WHO): http://www.who.int/peh-emf/en/.
- International Commission on Non-lonizing Radiation Protection: http://www.icnirp.de.
- Health Protection Agency: http://www.hpa.org.uk/Topics/Radiation/.

US Food and Drug Administration:
 <a href="http://www.fda.gov/Radiation-EmittingProducts/">http://www.fda.gov/Radiation-EmittingProducts/</a>
 RadiationEmittingProductsandProcedures/
 HomeBusinessandEntertainment/CellPhones/default.htm.

# Specific Absorption Rate (SAR) Certification Information

Your wireless phone is a radio transmitter and receiver. It is designed and manufactured not to exceed the exposure limits for Radio Frequency (RF) energy set by the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) of the U.S. Government.

These FCC RF exposure limits are derived from the recommendations of two expert organizations: the National Council on Radiation Protection and Measurement (NCRP) and the Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers (IEEE). In both cases, the recommendations were developed by scientific and engineering experts drawn from industry, government, and academia after extensive reviews of the scientific literature related to the biological effects of RF energy.

The RF exposure limit set by the FCC for wireless mobile phones employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate (SAR). The SAR is a measure of the rate of absorption of RF energy by the human body

expressed in units of watts per kilogram (W/kg). The FCC requires wireless phones to comply with a safety limit of 1.6 watts per kilogram (1.6 W/kg).

The FCC SAR limit incorporates a substantial margin of safety to give additional protection to the public and to account for any variations in measurements.

SAR tests are conducted using standard operating positions accepted by the FCC with the phone transmitting at its highest certified power level in all tested frequency bands. Although the SAR is determined at the highest certified power level, the actual SAR level of the phone while operating can be well below the maximum reported value. This is because the phone is designed to operate at multiple power levels so as to use only the power required to reach the network. In general, the closer you are to a wireless base station antenna, the lower the power output of the phone. Before a new model phone is available for sale to the public. it must be tested and certified to the ECC that it does not exceed the SAR limit established by the FCC. Tests for each model phone are performed in positions and locations (e.g. at the ear and worn on the body) as required by the FCC. For body-worn operation, this phone has been tested and meets

FCC RF exposure guidelines when used with an accessory that contains no metal and that positions the mobile device a minimum of 1.0 cm from the body.

Use of other accessories may not ensure compliance with FCC RF exposure guidelines. The FCC has granted an Equipment Authorization for this mobile phone with all reported SAR levels evaluated as in compliance with the FCC RF exposure guidelines. The maximum SAR values for this model phone as reported to the FCC is:

Head: 0.43 W/kg.

Body-worn: 1.26 W/kg.

SAR information on this and other model phones can be accessed online on the FCC's website through <a href="http://transition.fcc.gov/oet/rfsafety/sar.html">http://transition.fcc.gov/oet/rfsafety/sar.html</a>. To find information that pertains to a particular model phone, this site uses the phone FCC ID number which is usually printed somewhere on the case of the phone. Sometimes it may be necessary to remove the battery pack to find the number. Once you have the FCC ID number for a particular phone, follow the instructions on the website and it should provide values for typical or maximum SAR for a particular phone. Additional

SAR information can also be obtained at http://www.fcc.gov/encyclopedia/specific-absorption-rate-sarcellular-telephones.

## **FCC Part 15 Information to User**

Pursuant to part 15.21 of the FCC Rules, you are cautioned that changes or modifications not expressly approved by Samsung could void your authority to operate the device.

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Note: This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications.

However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception,

which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

# Commercial Mobile Alerting System (CMAS)

This device is designed to receive wireless emergency alerts from the Commercial Mobile Alerting System ("CMAS"; which may also be known as the Personal Localized Alerting Network ("PLAN")). If your wireless provider has chosen to participate in CMAS/PLAN, alerts are available while in the provider's coverage area. If you travel outside your provider's coverage area, wireless emergency alerts may not be available. For more information, please contact your wireless provider.

## Smart Practices While Driving On the Road - Off the Phone

The primary responsibility of every driver is the safe operation of his or her vehicle.

Responsible drivers understand that no secondary task should be performed while driving whether it be eating, drinking, talking to passengers, or talking on a mobile phone - unless the driver has assessed the driving conditions and is confident that the secondary task will not interfere with their primary responsibility. Do not engage in any activity while driving a moving vehicle which may cause you to take your eyes off the road or become so absorbed in the activity that your ability to concentrate on the act of driving becomes impaired. Samsung is committed to promoting responsible driving and giving drivers the tools they need to understand and address distractions.

Check the laws and regulations on the use of mobile devices and their accessories in the areas where you drive. Always obey them. The use of these devices may be prohibited or restricted in certain areas. For example, only hands-free use may be permitted in certain areas.

Before answering calls, consider your circumstances. Let the call go to voicemail when driving conditions require.

Remember, driving comes first, not the call!

If you consider a call necessary and appropriate, follow these tips:

- Use a hands-free device;
- Secure your phone within easy reach;
- Place calls when you are not moving;
- · Plan calls when your car will be stationary;
- Do not engage in stressful or emotional conversations;
- Let the person with whom you are speaking know that you are driving and will suspend the call if necessary;
- Do not take notes or look up phone numbers while driving;

Notice regarding legal restrictions on mounting this device in an automobile:

Laws in some states may prohibit mounting this device on or near the windshield of an automobile. In other states, the law may permit mounting this device only in specific locations in the automobile. Be sure to consult the state and local laws or ordinances where you drive before mounting this device in an automobile. Failure to comply with these restrictions could result in fines, penalties, or other damages. Never mount this device in a manner that will obstruct the driver's clear view of the street and traffic.

Never use wireless data services such as text messaging, Web browsing, or e-mail while operating a vehicle.

Never watch videos, such as a movie or clip, or play video games while operating a vehicle.

For more information, go to <a href="http://www.ctia.org">http://www.ctia.org</a>.

## **Battery Use and Safety**

Important! Handle and store batteries properly to avoid injury or damage. Most battery issues arise from improper handling of batteries and, particularly, from the continued use of damaged batteries.

 Do not disassemble, crush, puncture, shred, or otherwise attempt to change the form of your battery. Do not put a high degree of pressure on the battery. This can cause leakage or an internal short-circuit, resulting in overheating.

- Do not let the phone or battery come in contact with liquids.
  Liquids can get into the phone's circuits, leading to corrosion.
  Even when the phone appears to be dry and appears to operate normally, the circuitry could slowly corrode and pose a safety hazard. If the phone and/or battery get wet, have them checked by your service provider or contact Samsung, even if they appear to be working properly.
- Do not place your battery in or near a heat source. Excessive
  heating can damage the phone or the battery and could cause the
  phone or the battery to explode. Do not dry a wet or damp battery
  with an appliance or heat source such as a microwave oven, hair
  dryer, iron, or radiator. Avoid leaving your phone in your car in
  high temperatures.
- Do not dispose of the phone or the battery in a fire. The phone
  or the battery may explode when overheated.
- Do not handle a damaged or leaking battery. Do not let leaking battery fluid come in contact with your eyes, skin or clothing. For safe disposal options, contact your nearest Samsung-authorized service center.

- Avoid dropping the cell phone. Dropping the phone or the battery, especially on a hard surface, can potentially cause damage to the phone and battery. If you suspect damage to the phone or battery, take it to a service center for inspection.
- Never use any charger or battery that is damaged in any way.
- Do not allow the battery to touch metal objects. Accidental
  short-circuiting can occur when a metallic object (coin, key,
  jewelry, clip, or pen) causes a direct connection between the +
  and terminals of the battery (metal strips on the battery), for
  example when you carry a spare battery in a pocket or bag.
  Short-circuiting the terminals may damage the battery or the
  object causing the short-circuiting.

Important! Use only Samsung-approved batteries, and recharge your battery only with Samsung-approved chargers which are specifically designed for your phone.

#### WARNING!

Use of a non-Samsung-approved battery or charger may present a risk of fire, explosion, leakage, or other hazard. Samsung's warranty does not cover damage to the phone caused by non-Samsung-approved batteries and/or chargers.

- Do not use incompatible cell phone batteries and chargers.
   Some websites and second-hand dealers not associated with reputable manufacturers and carriers, might be selling incompatible or even counterfeit batteries and chargers.
   Consumers should purchase manufacturer or carrier-recommended products and accessories. If unsure about whether a replacement battery or charger is compatible, contact the manufacturer of the battery or charger.
- Misuse or use of incompatible phones, batteries, and charging devices could result in damage to the equipment and a possible risk of fire, explosion, or leakage, leading to serious injuries, damages to your phone, or other serious hazard.

# Samsung Mobile Products and Recycling

Samsung cares for the environment and encourages its customers to recycle Samsung mobile devices and genuine Samsung accessories.

Proper disposal of your mobile device and its battery is not only important for safety, it benefits the environment. Batteries must be recycled or disposed of properly.

Recycling programs for your mobile device, batteries, and accessories may not be available in your area.

We've made it easy for you to recycle your old Samsung mobile device by working with respected take-back companies in every state in the country.

## Drop It Off

You can drop off your Samsung-branded mobile device and batteries for recycling at one of our numerous Samsung Recycling Direct (SM) locations. A list of these locations may be found at:

http://pages.samsung.com/us/recyclingdirect/ usactivities\_environment\_samsungrecyclingdirect\_locations.jsp

.

Samsung-branded devices and batteries will be accepted at these locations for no fee.

Consumers may also recycle their used mobile device or batteries at many retail or carrier-provided locations where mobile devices and batteries are sold. Additional information regarding specific locations may be found at: <a href="http://www.epa.gov/epawaste/partnerships/plugin/cellphone/index.htm">http://www.epa.gov/epawaste/partnerships/plugin/cellphone/index.htm</a> or at <a href="http://www.call2recycle.org/">http://www.call2recycle.org/</a>.

#### Mail It In

The Samsung Mobile Take-Back Program will provide Samsung customers with a free recycling mailing label. Just go to

http://www.samsung.com/us/aboutsamsung/citizenship/usactivities\_environment\_samsungrecyclingdirect.html?INT=ST A\_recyle\_your\_phone\_page and follow the instructions to print out a free pre-paid postage label and then send your old mobile device or battery to the address listed, via U.S. Mail, for recycling.

Dispose of unwanted electronics through an approved recycler.

To find the nearest recycling location, go to our website: www.samsung.com/recyclingdirect Or call, (877) 278-0799.

## Follow local regulations regarding disposal of mobile devices and batteries

Dispose of your mobile device and batteries in accordance with local regulations. In some areas, the disposal of these items in household or business trash may be prohibited. Help us protect the environment - recycle!

**Warning!** Never dispose of batteries in a fire because they may explode.

## **UL Certified Travel Charger**

The Travel Charger for this phone has met applicable UL safety requirements. Please adhere to the following safety instructions per UL guidelines:

FAILURE TO FOLLOW THE INSTRUCTIONS OUTLINED MAY LEAD TO SERIOUS PERSONAL INJURY AND POSSIBLE PROPERTY DAMAGE.

IMPORTANT SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS - SAVE THESE INSTRUCTIONS.

DANGER - TO REDUCE THE RISK OF FIRE OR ELECTRIC SHOCK, CAREFULLY FOLLOW THESE INSTRUCTIONS.

FOR CONNECTION TO A SUPPLY NOT IN NORTH AMERICA, USE AN ATTACHMENT PLUG ADAPTOR OF THE PROPER CONFIGURATION FOR THE POWER OUTLET.

THIS POWER UNIT IS INTENDED TO BE CORRECTLY ORIENTED IN A VERTICAL OR HORIZONTAL OR FLOOR MOUNT POSITION.

## **Display / Touch-Screen**

Please note the following information when using your mobile device:

#### WARNING REGARDING DISPLAY

The display on your mobile device is made of glass or acrylic and could break if your mobile device is dropped or if it receives significant impact. Do not use if screen is broken or cracked as this could cause injury to you.

## WARRANTY DISCLAIMER: PROPER USE OF A TOUCH-SCREEN MOBILE DEVICE

If your mobile device has a touch-screen display, please note that a touch-screen responds best to a light touch from the pad of your finger or a non-metallic stylus. Using excessive force or a metallic object when pressing on the touch-screen may damage the tempered glass surface and void the warranty. For more information, please refer to the "Standard Limited Warranty".

## **GPS & AGPS**

Certain Samsung mobile devices can use a Global Positioning System (GPS) signal for location-based applications. A GPS uses satellites controlled by the U.S. Government that are subject to changes implemented in accordance with the Department of Defense policy and the 2008 Federal Radio navigation Plan (FRP). Changes may affect the performance of location-based technology on your mobile device.

Certain Samsung mobile devices can also use an Assisted Global Positioning System (AGPS), which obtains information from the cellular network to improve GPS performance. AGPS uses your wireless service provider's network and therefore airtime, data charges, and/or additional charges may apply in accordance with your service plan. Contact your wireless service provider for details.

#### **Your Location**

Location-based information includes information that can be used to determine the approximate location of a mobile device. Mobile devices which are connected to a wireless network transmit location-based information. Additionally, if you use applications that require location-based information (e.g. driving directions), such applications transmit location-based information. The location-based information may be shared with third-parties, including your wireless service provider, applications providers, Samsung, and other third-parties providing services.

## **Use of AGPS in Emergency Calls**

When you make an emergency call, the cellular network may activate AGPS technology in your mobile device to tell the emergency responders your approximate location.

AGPS has limitations and **might not work in your area**. Therefore:

 Always tell the emergency responder your location to the best of your ability; and  Remain on the mobile device for as long as the emergency responder instructs you.

## **Navigation**

Maps, directions, and other navigation-data, including data relating to your current location, may contain inaccurate or incomplete data, and circumstances can and do change over time. In some areas, complete information may not be available. Therefore, you should always visually confirm that the navigational instructions are consistent with what you see before following them. All users should pay attention to road conditions, closures, traffic, and all other factors that may impact safe driving or walking. Always obey posted road signs.

## **Emergency Calls**

This mobile device, like any wireless mobile device, operates using radio signals, wireless and landline networks, as well as user-programmed functions, which cannot guarantee connection in all conditions, areas, or circumstances.

Therefore, you should never rely solely on any wireless mobile device for essential communications (medical emergencies, for example). Before traveling in remote or underdeveloped areas, plan an alternate method of contacting emergency services personnel. Remember, to

make or receive any calls, the mobile device must be switched on and in a service area with adequate signal strength.

Emergency calls may not be possible on all wireless mobile device networks or when certain network services and/or mobile device features are in use. Check with local service providers.

### To make an emergency call:

- 1. If the mobile device is not on, switch it on.
- 2. From the Home screen, tap .
- Key in the emergency number for your present location (for example, 911 or other official emergency number). Emergency numbers vary by location.
- 4. Tap (

If certain features are in use (call blocking, for example), you may first need to deactivate those features before you can make an emergency call. Consult your User Manual and your local cellular service provider. When making an emergency call, remember to give all the necessary information as accurately as possible. Remember that your mobile device

may be the only means of communication at the scene of an accident; do not cut off the call until given permission to do so.

### **Care and Maintenance**

Your mobile device is a product of superior design and craftsmanship and should be treated with care. The suggestions below will help you fulfill any warranty obligations and allow you to enjoy this product for many years:

### Keep your Samsung Mobile Device away from:

## Liquids of any kind

Keep the mobile device dry. Precipitation, humidity, and liquids contain minerals that will corrode electronic circuits. If the mobile device does get wet, do not accelerate drying with the use of an oven, microwave, or dryer, because this may damage the mobile device and could cause a fire or explosion.

Do not use the mobile device with a wet hand. Doing so may cause an electric shock to you or damage to the mobile device.

#### Extreme heat or cold

Avoid temperatures below 0°C / 32°F or above 45°C / 113°F.

#### Microwaves

Do not try to dry your mobile device in a microwave oven. Doing so may cause a fire or explosion.

### **Dust and dirt**

Do not expose your mobile device to dust, dirt, or sand.

### Cleaning solutions

Do not use harsh chemicals, cleaning solvents, or strong detergents to clean the mobile device. Wipe it with a soft cloth slightly dampened in a mild soap-and-water solution.

#### Shock or vibration

Do not drop, knock, or shake the mobile device. Rough handling can break internal circuit boards.

#### **Paint**

Do not paint the mobile device. Paint can clog the device's moving parts or ventilation openings and prevent proper operation.

## **Responsible Listening**

#### Caution! Avoid potential hearing loss.

Damage to hearing occurs when a person is exposed to loud sounds over time. The risk of hearing loss increases as sound is played louder and for longer durations. Prolonged exposure to loud sounds (including music) is the most common cause of preventable hearing loss. Some scientific research suggests that using portable audio devices, such as portable music players and cell phones, at high volume settings for long durations may lead to permanent noise-induced hearing loss.

This includes the use of headphones (including headsets, earbuds, and Bluetooth® or other wireless devices). Exposure to very loud sound has also been associated in some studies with tinnitus (a ringing in the ear), hypersensitivity to sound, and distorted hearing. Individual susceptibility to noise-induced hearing loss and potential hearing problem varies. Additionally, the amount of sound produced by a portable audio device varies depending on the nature of the sound, the device settings, and the headphones

that are used. As a result, there is no single volume setting that is appropriate for everyone or for every combination of sound, settings, and equipment.

You should follow some common sense recommendations when using any portable audio device:

- Always turn the volume down before plugging the earphones into an audio source.
- Set the volume in a quiet environment and select the lowest volume at which you can hear adequately.
- Be aware that you can adapt to higher volume settings over time, not realizing that the higher volume may be harmful to your hearing.
- When using headphones, turn the volume down if you cannot hear the people speaking near you or if the person sitting next to you can hear what you are listening to.
- Do not turn the volume up to block out noisy surroundings. If you
  choose to listen to your portable device in a noisy environment,
  use noise-cancelling headphones to block out background
  environmental noise. By blocking background environment noise,
  noise cancelling headphones should allow you to hear the music
  at lower volumes than when using earbuds.

- Limit the amount of time you listen. As the volume increases, less time is required before you hearing could be affected.
- Avoid using headphones after exposure to extremely loud noises, such as rock concerts, that might cause temporary hearing loss.
   Temporary hearing loss might cause unsafe volumes to sound normal.
- Do not listen at any volume that causes you discomfort. If you
  experience ringing in your ears, hear muffled speech, or
  experience any temporary hearing difficulty after listening to your
  portable audio device, discontinue use and consult your doctor.

You can obtain additional information on this subject from the following sources:

#### American Academy of Audiology

11730 Plaza American Drive, Suite 300

Reston, VA 20190

Voice: (800) 222-2336

Email: info@audiology.org

Internet:

http://www.audiology.org/Pages/default.aspx

## National Institute on Deafness and Other Communication Disorders

National Institutes of Health 31 Center Drive, MSC 2320 Bethesda, MD 20892-2320

E II II II COUL

Email: nidcdinfo@nih.gov

Internet:

http://www.nidcd.nih.gov/

## National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH)

395 E Street, S.W., Suite 9200 Patriots Plaza Building Washington, DC 20201

Voice: 1-800-35-NIOSH (1-800-356-4674)

1-800-CDC-INFO (1-800-232-4636)

Outside the U.S. 513-533-8328

Email: cdcinfo@cdc.gov

Internet:

http://www.cdc.gov/niosh/topics/noise/ default html

1-888-232-6348 TTY

## **Operating Environment**

Remember to follow any special regulations in force in any area, and always switch your mobile device off whenever it is forbidden to use it, or when it may cause interference or danger. When connecting the mobile device or any accessory to another device, read its user's guide for detailed safety instructions. Do not connect incompatible products.

## Using Your Mobile Device Near Other Electronic Devices

Most modern electronic equipment is shielded from Radio Frequency (RF) signals. However, certain electronic equipment may not be shielded against the RF signals from your wireless mobile device. Consult the manufacturer to discuss alternatives.

### **Implantable Medical Devices**

A minimum separation of six (6) inches should be maintained between a handheld wireless mobile device and an implantable medical device, such as a pacemaker or implantable cardioverter defibrillator, to avoid potential interference with the device.

Persons who have such devices:

- Should ALWAYS keep the mobile device more than six (6) inches from their implantable medical device when the mobile device is turned ON:
- Should not carry the mobile device in a breast pocket;
- Should use the ear opposite the implantable medical device to minimize the potential for interference;
- Should turn the mobile device OFF immediately if there is any reason to suspect that interference is taking place;
- Should read and follow the directions from the manufacturer of your implantable medical device. If you have any questions about using your wireless mobile device with an implantable medical device, consult your health care provider.

For more information see: <a href="http://www.fcc.gov/oet/rfsafety/rf-fags.html#">http://www.fcc.gov/oet/rfsafety/rf-fags.html#</a>.

#### Other Medical Devices

If you use any other personal medical devices, consult the manufacturer of your device to determine if it is adequately shielded from external RF energy. Your physician may be able to assist you in obtaining this information. Switch your mobile device off in health care facilities when any regulations posted in these areas instruct you to do so. Hospitals or health care facilities may be using equipment that could be sensitive to external RF energy.

#### **Vehicles**

RF signals may affect improperly installed or inadequately shielded electronic systems in motor vehicles. Check with the manufacturer or its representative regarding your vehicle before using your mobile device in a motor vehicle. You should also consult the manufacturer of any equipment that has been added to your vehicle.

#### **Posted Facilities**

Switch your mobile device off in any facility where posted notices require you to do so.

### **Potentially Explosive Environments**

Switch your mobile device off when in any area with a potentially explosive atmosphere and obey all signs and instructions. Sparks in such areas could cause an explosion

or fire resulting in bodily injury or even death. Users are advised to switch the mobile device off while at a refueling point (service station).

Users are reminded of the need to observe restrictions on the use of radio equipment in fuel depots (fuel storage and distribution areas), chemical plants, or where blasting operations are in progress. Areas with a potentially explosive atmosphere are often, but not always, clearly marked. They include below deck on boats, chemical transfer or storage facilities, vehicles using liquefied petroleum gas (such as propane or butane), areas where the air contains chemicals or particles, such as grain, dust, or metal powders, and any other area where you would normally be advised to turn off your vehicle engine.

## When your Device is Wet

Do not turn on your device if it is wet. If your device is already on, turn it off and remove the battery immediately (if the device will not turn off or you cannot remove the battery, leave it as-is). Then, dry the device with a towel and take it to a service center.

# FCC Hearing Aid Compatibility (HAC) Regulations for Wireless Devices

The U.S. Federal Communications Commission (FCC) has established requirements for digital wireless mobile devices to be compatible with hearing aids and other assistive hearing devices.

When individuals employing some assistive hearing devices (hearing aids and cochlear implants) use wireless mobile devices, they may detect a buzzing, humming, or whining noise. Some hearing devices are more immune than others to this interference noise, and mobile devices also vary in the amount of interference they generate.

The wireless telephone industry has developed a rating system for wireless mobile devices to assist hearing device users find mobile devices that may be compatible with their hearing devices. Not all mobile devices have been rated. Mobile devices that are rated have the rating on their box or a label located on the box.

The ratings are not guarantees. Results will vary depending on the user's hearing device and hearing loss. If your hearing device happens to be vulnerable to interference, you may not be able to use a rated mobile device successfully. Trying out the mobile device with your hearing device is the best way to evaluate it for your personal needs.

M-Ratings: Wireless mobile devices rated M3 or M4 meet FCC requirements and are likely to generate less interference to hearing devices than mobile devices that are not labeled. M4 is the better/higher of the two ratings. M-ratings refer to enabling acoustic coupling with hearing aids that do not operate in telecoil mode.

**T-Ratings:** Mobile devices rated T3 or T4 meet FCC requirements and are likely to generate less interference to hearing devices than mobile devices that are not labeled. T4 is the better/higher of the two ratings. T-ratings refer to enabling inductive coupling with hearing aids operating in telecoil mode.

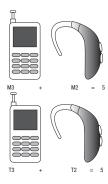
Hearing devices may also be rated. Your hearing aid manufacturer or hearing health professional may help you find this rating. Higher ratings mean that the hearing device is relatively immune to interference noise.

Under the current industry standard, American National Standards Institute (ANSI) C63.19, the hearing aid and wireless mobile device rating values are added together to indicate how usable they are together. For example, if a

hearing aid meets the M2 level rating and the wireless mobile device meets the M3 level rating, the sum of the two values equals M5.

Under the standard, this should provide the hearing aid user with normal use while using the hearing aid with the particular wireless mobile device. A sum of 6 or more would indicate excellent performance.

However, these are not guarantees that all users will be satisfied. T ratings work similarly.



The HAC rating and measurement procedure are described in the American National Standards Institute (ANSI) C63.19 standard

## **HAC for Newer Technologies**

This phone has been tested and rated for use with hearing aids for some of the wireless technologies that it uses. However, there may be some newer wireless technologies used in this phone that have not been tested yet for use with hearing aids.

It is important to try the different features of this phone thoroughly and in different locations, using your hearing aid or cochlear implant, to determine if you hear any interfering noise. Consult your service provider or the manufacturer of this phone for information on hearing aid compatibility. If you have questions about return or exchange policies, consult your service provider or phone retailer.

# Restricting Children's Access to Your Mobile Device

Your mobile device is not a toy. Do not allow children to play with it because they could hurt themselves and others, damage the mobile device, or make calls that increase your mobile device bill

Keep the mobile device and all its parts and accessories out of the reach of small children.

# FCC Notice and Cautions

The mobile device may cause TV or radio interference if used in close proximity to receiving equipment. The FCC can require you to stop using the mobile device if such interference cannot be eliminated. Vehicles using liquefied petroleum gas (such as propane or butane) must comply with the National Fire Protection Standard (NFPA-58). For a copy of this standard, contact the National Fire Protection Association.

#### **Cautions**

Any changes or modifications to your mobile device not expressly approved in this document could void your warranty for this equipment and void your authority to operate this equipment. Only use approved batteries, antennas, and chargers. The use of any unauthorized accessories may be dangerous and void the mobile device warranty if said accessories cause damage or a defect to the mobile device.

Although your mobile device is quite sturdy, it is a complex piece of equipment and can be broken. Avoid dropping, hitting, bending, or sitting on it.

## **Other Important Safety Information**

- Only qualified personnel should service the mobile device or install the mobile device in a vehicle. Faulty installation or service may be dangerous and may invalidate any warranty applicable to the device.
- Ensure that any mobile devices or related equipment installed in your vehicle are securely mounted.
- Check regularly that all wireless mobile device equipment in your vehicle is mounted and operating properly.
- When using a headset in dry environments, static electricity can build up in the headset and cause a small quick static electrical shock. To minimize the risk of electrostatic discharge from the headset avoid using the headset in extremely dry environments or touch a grounded unpainted metal object to discharge static electricity before inserting the headset.
- Do not store or carry flammable liquids, gases, or explosive materials in the same compartment as the mobile device, its parts, or accessories.

- For vehicles equipped with an air bag, remember that an air bag inflates with great force. Do not place objects, including installed or portable wireless equipment near or in the area over the air bag or in the air bag deployment area. If wireless equipment is improperly installed and the air bag inflates, serious injury could result.
- Switch your mobile device off before boarding an aircraft. The use
  of wireless mobile devices in aircraft is illegal and may be
  dangerous to the aircraft's operation. Check with appropriate
  authorities before using any function of a mobile device while on
  an aircraft.
- Failure to observe these instructions may lead to the suspension or denial of cell phone services to the offender, or legal action, or both.
- While using your device, leave some lights on in the room and do not hold the screen too close to your eyes.
- Seizures or blackouts can occur when you are exposed to flashing lights while watching videos or playing games for extended periods. If you feel any discomfort, stop using the device immediately.

- Reduce risk of repetitive motion injuries. When you repetitively perform actions, such as pressing keys, drawing characters on a touch screen with your fingers, or playing games, you may experience occasional discomfort in your hands, neck, shoulders, or other parts of your body. When using your device for extended periods, hold the device with a relaxed grip, press the keys lightly, and take frequent breaks. If you continue to have discomfort during or after such use, stop use and see a physician.
- If your device has a camera flash or light, do not use the flash or light close to the eyes of people or pets. [122011]

## **Section 14: Warranty Information**

## **Standard Limited Warranty**

### What is covered and for how long?

SAMSUNG TELECOMMUNICATIONS AMERICA, LLC ("SAMSUNG") warrants that SAMSUNG's handsets and accessories ("Products") are free from defects in material and workmanship under normal use and service for the period commencing upon the date of purchase by the first consumer purchaser and continuing for the following specified period of time after that date:

Phone 1 Year
Batteries 1 Year
Case/Pouch/Holster 90 Days

Other Phone Accessories 1 Year

#### What is not covered?

This Limited Warranty is conditioned upon proper use of the Product.

This Limited Warranty does not cover: (a) defects or damage resulting from accident, misuse, abnormal use, abnormal conditions, improper storage, exposure to liquid, moisture. dampness, sand or dirt, neglect, or unusual physical, electrical or electromechanical stress; (b) scratches, dents and cosmetic damage, unless caused by SAMSUNG: (c) defects or damage resulting from excessive force or use of a metallic object when pressing on a touch screen; (d) equipment that has the serial number or the enhancement data code removed, defaced, damaged, altered or made illegible; (e) ordinary wear and tear; (f) defects or damage resulting from the use of Product in conjunction or connection with accessories, products, or ancillary/peripheral equipment not furnished or approved by SAMSUNG: (a) defects or damage resulting from improper testing, operation, maintenance, installation, service, or adjustment not furnished or approved by SAMSUNG; (h) defects or damage resulting from external causes such as collision with an object, fire, flooding, dirt, windstorm, lightning, earthquake, exposure to weather conditions, theft, blown fuse, or improper use of any electrical source: (i) defects or damage resulting from cellular signal reception or transmission, or viruses or other software problems introduced into the Product; or (j) Product used or purchased outside the United States. This Limited Warranty covers batteries only if battery capacity falls below 80% of rated capacity or the battery leaks, and this Limited Warranty does not cover any battery if (i) the battery has been charged by a battery charger not specified or approved by SAMSUNG for charging the battery; (ii) any of the seals on the battery are broken or show evidence of tampering; or (iii) the battery has been used in equipment other than the SAMSUNG phone for which it is specified.

## What are SAMSUNG's obligations?

During the applicable warranty period, provided the Product is returned in accordance with the terms of this Limited Warranty, SAMSUNG will repair or replace the Product, at SAMSUNG's sole option, without charge. SAMSUNG may, at SAMSUNG's sole option, use rebuilt, reconditioned, or new parts or components when repairing any Product, or may replace the Product with a rebuilt, reconditioned or new Product.

Repaired/replaced cases, pouches and holsters will be warranted for a period of ninety (90) days. All other repaired/replaced Products will be warranted for a period equal to the

remainder of the original Limited Warranty on the original Product or for ninety (90) days, whichever is longer. All replaced Products, parts, components, boards and equipment shall become the property of SAMSUNG. Except to any extent expressly allowed by applicable law, transfer or assignment of this Limited Warranty is prohibited.

### What must you do to obtain warranty service?

To obtain service under this Limited Warranty, you must return the Product to an authorized phone service facility in an adequate container for shipping, accompanied by the sales receipt or comparable proof of sale showing the original date of purchase, the serial number of the Product and the seller's name and address.

To obtain assistance on where to deliver the Product, please call SAMSUNG Customer Care at 1-888-987-4357. If SAMSUNG determines that any Product is not covered by this Limited Warranty, you must pay all parts, shipping, and labor charges for the repair or return of such Product.

You should keep a separate backup copy of any contents of the Product before delivering the Product to SAMSUNG for warranty service, as some or all of the contents may be deleted or reformatted during the course of warranty service.

#### What are the limits on SAMSUNG's liability?

THIS LIMITED WARRANTY SETS OUT THE FULL EXTENT OF SAMSUNG'S RESPONSIBILITIES, AND THE EXCLUSIVE REMEDY REGARDING THE PRODUCTS.

ALL IMPLIED WARRANTIES. INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, ARE LIMITED TO THE DURATION OF THIS LIMITED WARRANTY, IN NO EVENT SHALL SAMSUNG BE LIABLE FOR DAMAGES IN EXCESS OF THE PURCHASE PRICE OF THE PRODUCT OR FOR, WITHOUT LIMITATION. COMMERCIAL LOSS OF ANY SORT: LOSS OF USE. TIME. DATA. REPUTATION. OPPORTUNITY. GOODWILL. PROFITS OR SAVINGS; INCONVENIENCE; INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL. CONSEQUENTIAL OR PUNITIVE DAMAGES: OR DAMAGES ARISING FROM THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THE PRODUCT, SOME STATES AND JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW LIMITATIONS ON HOW LONG AN IMPLIED WARRANTY LASTS. OR THE DISCLAIMER OR LIMITATION OF INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, SO THE ABOVE LIMITATIONS AND DISCLAIMERS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.

SAMSUNG MAKES NO WARRANTIES OR REPRESENTATIONS, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, STATUTORY OR OTHERWISE, AS TO THE QUALITY, CAPABILITIES, OPERATIONS, PERFORMANCE

OR SUITABILITY OF ANY THIRD-PARTY SOFTWARE OR EQUIPMENT USED IN CONJUNCTION WITH THE PRODUCT, OR THE ABILITY TO INTEGRATE ANY SUCH SOFTWARE OR EQUIPMENT WITH THE PRODUCT, WHETHER SUCH THIRD-PARTY SOFTWARE OR EQUIPMENT IS INCLUDED WITH THE PRODUCT DISTRIBUTED BY SAMSUNG OR OTHERWISE. RESPONSIBILITY FOR THE QUALITY, CAPABILITIES, OPERATIONS, PERFORMANCE AND SUITABILITY OF ANY SUCH THIRD-PARTY SOFTWARE OR EQUIPMENT RESTS SOLELY WITH THE USER AND THE DIRECT VENDOR, OWNER OR SUPPLIER OF SUCH THIRD-PARTY SOFTWARE OR EQUIPMENT.

Nothing in the Product instructions or information shall be construed to create an express warranty of any kind with respect to the Products. No agent, employee, dealer, representative or reseller is authorized to modify or extend this Limited Warranty or to make binding representations or claims, whether in advertising, presentations or otherwise, on behalf of SAMSUNG regarding the Products or this Limited Warranty.

This Limited Warranty gives you specific legal rights, and you may also have other rights that vary from state to state.

#### What is the procedure for resolving disputes?

ALL DISPUTES WITH SAMSUNG ARISING IN ANY WAY FROM THIS LIMITED WARRANTY OR THE SALE, CONDITION OR PERFORMANCE OF THE PRODUCTS SHALL BE RESOLVED EXCLUSIVELY THROUGH FINAL AND BINDING ARBITRATION, AND NOT BY A COURT OR JURY.

Any such dispute shall not be combined or consolidated with a dispute involving any other person's or entity's Product or claim, and specifically, without limitation of the foregoing, shall not under any circumstances proceed as part of a class action. The arbitration shall be conducted before a single arbitrator, whose award may not exceed, in form or amount, the relief allowed by the applicable law. The arbitration shall be conducted according to the American Arbitration Association (AAA) Commercial Arbitration Rules applicable to consumer disputes. This arbitration provision is entered pursuant to the Federal Arbitration Act. The laws of the State of Texas, without reference to its choice of laws principles. shall govern the interpretation of the Limited Warranty and all disputes that are subject to this arbitration provision. The arbitrator shall decide all issues of interpretation and application of this arbitration provision and the Limited Warranty.

For any arbitration in which your total damage claims. exclusive of attorney fees and expert witness fees, are \$5,000.00 or less ("Small Claim"), the arbitrator may, if you prevail, award your reasonable attorney fees, expert witness fees and costs as part of any award, but may not grant SAMSUNG its attorney fees, expert witness fees or costs unless it is determined that the claim was brought in bad faith. In a Small Claim case, you shall be required to pay no more than half of the total administrative, facility and arbitrator fees, or \$50.00 of such fees, whichever is less, and SAMSUNG shall pay the remainder of such fees. Administrative, facility and arbitrator fees for arbitrations in which your total damage claims, exclusive of attorney fees and expert witness fees, exceed \$5,000.00 ("Large Claim") shall be determined according to AAA rules. In a Large Claim case, the arbitrator may grant to the prevailing party, or apportion among the parties, reasonable attorney fees, expert witness fees and costs. Judgment may be entered on the arbitrator's award in any court of competent jurisdiction. This arbitration provision also applies to claims against SAMSUNG's employees, representatives and affiliates if any such claim arises from the Product's sale, condition or

performance.

You may opt out of this dispute resolution procedure by providing notice to SAMSUNG no later than 30 calendar days from the date of the first consumer purchaser's purchase of the Product. To opt out, you must send notice by e-mail to optout@sta.samsung.com, with the subject line: "Arbitration Opt Out," You must include in the opt out e-mail (a) your name and address; (b) the date on which the Product was purchased; (c) the Product model name or model number; and (d) the IMEI or MEID or Serial Number, as applicable, if you have it (the IMEI or MEID or Serial Number can be found (i) on the Product box; (ii) on the Product information screen, which can be found under "Settings:" (iii) on a label on the back of the Product beneath the battery, if the battery is removable; and (iv) on the outside of the Product if the battery is not removable). Alternatively, you may opt out by calling 1-888-987-4357 no later than 30 calendar days from the date of the first consumer purchaser's purchase of the Product and providing the same information. These are the only two forms of notice that will be effective to opt out of this dispute resolution procedure. Opting out of this dispute resolution procedure will not affect the coverage of the Limited Warranty in any way, and you will continue to enjoy the benefits of the Limited Warranty.

### Severability

If any portion of this Limited Warranty is held to be illegal or unenforceable, such partial illegality or unenforceability shall not affect the enforceability of the remainder of the Limited Warranty.

## **Precautions for Transfer and Disposal**

If data stored on this device is deleted or reformatted using the standard methods, the data only appears to be removed on a superficial level, and it may be possible for someone to retrieve and reuse the data by means of special software.

To avoid unintended information leaks and other problems of this sort, it is recommended that the device be returned to Samsung's Customer Care Center for an Extended File System (EFS) Clear which will eliminate all user memory and return all settings to default settings. Please contact the Samsung Customer Care Center for details.

Important! Please provide warranty information (proof of purchase) to Samsung's Customer Care Center in order to provide this service at no charge. If the warranty has expired on the device, charges may apply.

Samsung Telecommunications America, LLC

1301 E. Lookout Drive Richardson. Texas 75082

Phone: 1-800-SAMSUNG

Phone: 1-888-987-HELP (4357)

©2012 Samsung Telecommunications America, LLC. All rights reserved.

No reproduction in whole or in part allowed without prior written approval. Specifications and availability subject to change without notice. [111611]

# End User License Agreement for Software

IMPORTANT. READ CAREFULLY: This End User License Agreement ("EULA") is a legal agreement between you (either an individual or a single entity) and Samsung Electronics Co., Ltd. ("Samsung Electronics Co.") for software, owned by Samsung Electronics Co. and its affiliated companies and its third party suppliers and licensors, that accompanies this EULA, which includes computer software and may include associated media, printed materials, "online" or electronic documentation

("Software"). Samsung Electronics Co. is a separate company from the company that provides the limited warranty for this mobile device, Samsung Telecommunications America, LLC.

This device requires the use of preloaded software in its normal operation. BY USING THE DEVICE OR ITS PRELOADED SOFTWARE, YOU ACCEPT THE TERMS OF THIS EULA. IF YOU DO NOT ACCEPT THESE TERMS, **DO NOT USE** THE DEVICE OR THE SOFTWARE. INSTEAD, RETURN THE DEVICE TO THE RETAILER FOR A REFUND OR CREDIT.

1. GRANT OF LICENSE. Samsung Electronics Co. grants you the following rights provided that you comply with all terms and conditions of this EULA: You may install, use, access, display and run one copy of the Software on the local hard disk(s) or other permanent storage media of one computer and use the Software on a single computer or a mobile device at a time, and you may not make the Software available over a network where it could be used by multiple computers at the same time. You may make one copy of the Software in machine readable form for backup purposes only; provided that the backup copy must include all copyright or other proprietary notices contained on the original.

- 2. RESERVATION OF RIGHTS AND OWNERSHIP. Samsung Electronics Co. reserves all rights not expressly granted to you in this EULA. The Software is protected by copyright and other intellectual property laws and treaties. Samsung Electronics Co. or its suppliers own the title, copyright and other intellectual property rights in the Software. The Software is licensed, not sold.
- 3. LIMITATIONS ON END USER RIGHTS. You may not reverse engineer, decompile, disassemble, or otherwise attempt to discover the source code or algorithms of, the Software (except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law not withstanding this limitation), or modify, or disable any features of, the Software, or create derivative works based on the Software. You may not rent, lease, lend, sublicense or provide commercial hosting services with the Software.
- 4. CONSENT TO USE OF DATA. You agree that Samsung Electronics Co. and its affiliates may collect and use technical information gathered as part of the product support services related to the Software provided to you, if any. Samsung Electronics Co. and its affiliates may use this information solely to improve their products or to provide

- customized services or technologies to you and will not disclose this information in a form that personally identifies you.
- 5. UPGRADES. This EULA applies to updates, supplements and add-on components (if any) of the Software that Samsung Electronics Co. may provide to you or make available to you after the date you obtain your initial copy of the Software, unless we provide other terms along with such upgrade. To use Software identified as an upgrade, you must first be licensed for the Software identified by Samsung Electronics Co. as eligible for the upgrade. After upgrading, you may no longer use the Software that formed the basis for your upgrade eligibility.
- 6. SOFTWARE TRANSFER. You may not transfer this EULA or the rights to the Software granted herein to any third party unless it is in connection with the sale of the mobile device which the Software accompanied. In such event, the transfer must include all of the Software (including all component parts, the media and printed materials, any upgrades, this EULA) and you may not retain any copies of the Software. The transfer may not be an indirect transfer, such as a consignment. Prior to the transfer, the end user receiving the Software must agree to all the EULA terms.

- 7. EXPORT RESTRICTIONS. You acknowledge that the Software is subject to export restrictions of various countries. You agree to comply with all applicable international and national laws that apply to the Software, including the U.S. Export Administration Regulations, as well as end user, end use, and destination restrictions issued by U.S. and other governments.
- 8. TERMINATION. This EULA is effective until terminated. Your rights under this License will terminate automatically without notice from Samsung Electronics Co. if you fail to comply with any of the terms and conditions of this EULA. Upon termination of this EULA, you must cease all use of the Software and destroy all copies, full or partial, of the Software.
- 9. Disclaimer of Warranty. ALL SOFTWARE PROVIDED BY SAMSUNG ELECTRONICS CO. WITH THIS MOBILE DEVICE IS PROVIDED "AS IS" AND ON AN "AS AVAILABLE" BASIS, WITHOUT WARRANTIES OF ANY KIND FROM SAMSUNG ELECTRONICS CO., EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED. TO THE FULLEST EXTENT POSSIBLE PURSUANT TO APPLICABLE LAW, SAMSUNG ELECTRONICS CO. DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS, IMPLIED, OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, SATISFACTORY QUALITY OR
- WORKMANLIKE EFFORT, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, RELIABILITY OR AVAILABILITY, ACCURACY, LACK OF VIRUSES, QUIET ENJOYMENT, NON INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS OR OTHER VIOLATION OF RIGHTS. SOME JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW EXCLUSIONS OR LIMITATIONS OF IMPLIED WARRANTIES, SO THE ABOVE EXCLUSIONS OR LIMITATIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU. NO ADVICE OR INFORMATION, WHETHER ORAL OR WRITTEN, OBTAINED BY YOU FROM SAMSUNG ELECTRONICS CO. OR ITS AFFILIATES SHALL BE DEEMED TO ALTER THIS DISCLAIMER BY SAMSUNG ELECTRONICS CO. OF WARRANTY REGARDING THE SOFTWARE, OR TO CREATE ANY WARRANTY OF ANY SORT FROM SAMSUNG ELECTRONICS CO.
- 10. THIRD-PARTY APPLICATIONS. Certain third party applications may be included with, or downloaded to this mobile device. Samsung Electronics Co. makes no representations whatsoever about any of these applications. Since Samsung Electronics Co. has no control over such applications, you acknowledge and agree that Samsung Electronics Co. is not responsible for the availability of such applications and is not responsible or liable for any content, advertising, products, services, or other materials on or available from such applications. You expressly acknowledge and agree that use of third party applications is at your sole

risk and that the entire risk of unsatisfactory quality. performance, accuracy and effort is with you. It is up to you to take precautions to ensure that whatever you select to use is free of such items as viruses, worms, Trojan horses, and other items of a destructive nature. References on this mobile device to any names, marks, products, or services of any third-parties are provided solely as a convenience to you, and do not constitute or imply an endorsement, sponsorship, or recommendation of, or affiliation with the third party or its products and services. You agree that Samsung Electronics Co. shall not be responsible or liable, directly or indirectly, for any damage or loss caused or alleged to be caused by, or in connection with, use of or reliance on any such third party content, products, or services available on or through any such application. You acknowledge and agree that the use of any third-party application is governed by such third party application provider's Terms of Use, License Agreement, Privacy Policy, or other such agreement and that any information or personal data you provide, whether knowingly or unknowingly, to such third-party application provider, will be subject to such third party application provider's privacy policy, if such a policy exists, SAMSUNG ELECTRONICS CO.

DISCLAIMS ANY RESPONSIBILITY FOR ANY DISCLOSURE OF INFORMATION OR ANY OTHER PRACTICES OF ANY THIRD PARTY APPLICATION PROVIDER.

11. Disclaimer of Warranty Regarding Third Party Applications, SAMSUNG ELECTRONICS CO. DOES NOT WARRANT OR MAKE ANY REPRESENTATIONS REGARDING THE AVAILABILITY, USE, TIMELINESS, SECURITY, VALIDITY, ACCURACY, OR RELIABILITY OF, OR THE RESULTS OF THE USE OF, OR OTHERWISE RESPECTING, THE CONTENT OF ANY THIRD PARTY APPLICATION WHETHER SUCH THIRD PARTY APPLICATION IS INCLUDED WITH THE PRODUCT DISTRIBUTED BY SAMSUNG ELECTRONICS CO., IS DOWNLOADED, OR OTHERWISE OBTAINED. USE OF ANY THIRD PARTY APPLICATION IS DONE AT YOUR OWN DISCRETION AND RISK AND YOU ARE SOLELY RESPONSIBLE FOR ANY DAMAGE TO THE MOBILE DEVICE OR LOSS OF DATA THAT RESULTS FROM THE DOWNLOADING OR USE OF SUCH THIRD PARTY APPLICATIONS. SAMSUNG ELECTRONICS CO. EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMS ANY WARRANTY REGARDING WHETHER YOUR PERSONAL INFORMATION IS CAPTURED BY ANY THIRD PARTY APPLICATION PROVIDER OR THE USE TO WHICH SUCH PERSONAL INFORMATION MAY BE PUT BY SUCH THIRD PARTY APPLICATION PROVIDER, ANY THIRD PARTY APPLICATIONS PROVIDED WITH THIS MOBILE DEVICE

ARE PROVIDED "AS IS" AND ON AN "AS AVAILABLE" BASIS. WITHOUT WARRANTIES OF ANY KIND FROM SAMSUNG ELECTRONICS CO., EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, TO THE FULLEST EXTENT POSSIBLE PURSUANT TO APPLICABLE LAW, SAMSUNG ELECTRONICS CO. DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS. IMPLIED. OR STATUTORY. INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, SATISFACTORY QUALITY OR WORKMANLIKE EFFORT. FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, RELIABILITY OR AVAILABILITY, ACCURACY, LACK OF VIRUSES, QUIET ENJOYMENT, NON INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS OR OTHER VIOLATION OF RIGHTS. SAMSUNG ELECTRONICS CO. DOES NOT WARRANT AGAINST INTERFERENCE WITH YOUR ENJOYMENT OF THE THIRD PARTY APPLICATION. THAT THE FUNCTIONS CONTAINED IN THE THIRD PARTY APPLICATION WILL MEET YOUR REQUIREMENTS, THAT THE OPERATION OF THE THIRD PARTY APPLICATION WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED OR ERROR FREE. OR THAT DEFECTS IN THE THIRD PARTY APPLICATION WILL BE CORRECTED. YOU ASSUME THE ENTIRE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR, OR CORRECTION, SOME JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW EXCLUSIONS OR LIMITATIONS OF IMPLIED WARRANTIES, SO THE ABOVE EXCLUSIONS OR LIMITATIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU. NO

ADVICE OR INFORMATION, WHETHER ORAL OR WRITTEN, OBTAINED BY YOU FROM SAMSUNG ELECTRONICS CO. OR ANY OTHER PERSON OR ENTITY SHALL BE DEEMED TO ALTER THIS DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTY REGARDING THIRD PARTY APPLICATIONS, OR TO CREATE ANY WARRANTY BY SAMSUNG ELECTRONICS CO.

12. Limitation of Liability. SAMSUNG ELECTRONICS CO. WILL NOT BE LIABLE FOR ANY DAMAGES OF ANY KIND ARISING OUT OF OR RELATING TO THE USE OR THE INABILITY TO USE THE SOFTWARE OR ANY THIRD PARTY APPLICATION. ITS CONTENT OR FUNCTIONALITY. INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO DAMAGES CAUSED BY OR RELATED TO ERRORS. OMISSIONS, INTERRUPTIONS, DEFECTS, DELAY IN OPERATION OR TRANSMISSION. COMPUTER VIRUS. FAILURE TO CONNECT, NETWORK CHARGES, IN-APP PURCHASES. AND ALL OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES EVEN IF SAMSUNG ELECTRONICS CO. HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. SOME JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, SO THE ABOVE EXCLUSIONS OR LIMITATIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU. NOTWITHSTANDING THE FOREGOING, SAMSUNG ELECTRONIC CO.'S TOTAL LIABILITY TO YOU FOR ALL

LOSSES, DAMAGES, CAUSES OF ACTION, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THOSE BASED ON CONTRACT, TORT, OR OTHERWISE, ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF THE SOFTWARE OR THIRD PARTY APPLICATIONS ON THIS MOBILE DEVICE, OR ANY OTHER PROVISION OF THIS EULA, SHALL NOT EXCEED THE AMOUNT PURCHASER PAID SPECIFICALLY FOR THIS MOBILE DEVICE OR ANY SUCH THIRD PARTY APPLICATION THAT WAS INCLUDED WITH THIS MOBILE DEVICE. THE FOREGOING LIMITATIONS, EXCLUSIONS, AND DISCLAIMERS (INCLUDING SECTIONS 9, 10, 11 AND 12) SHALL APPLY TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, EVEN IF ANY REMEDY FAILS ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE.

13. U.S. Government End Users Restricted Rights. The Software is licensed only with "restricted rights" and as "commercial items" consisting of "commercial software" and "commercial software documentation" with only those rights as are granted to all other end users pursuant to the terms and conditions herein. All Products are provided only with "restricted rights" with only those rights as are granted to all other end users pursuant to the terms and conditions herein. All Software and Products are provided subject to Federal Acquisition Regulation (FAR) 52.227.19.

14. APPLICABLE LAW. This EULA is governed by the laws of TEXAS, without regard to conflicts of laws principles. This EULA shall not be governed by the UN Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, the application of which is expressly excluded.

#### 15. DISPUTE RESOLUTION.

- (a) Non-United States residents. If a dispute, controversy or difference is not amicably settled, it shall be finally resolved by arbitration in Seoul, Korea in accordance with the Arbitration Rules of the Korean Commercial Arbitration Board. The award of arbitration shall be final and binding upon the parties.
- (b) United States residents. ALL DISPUTES WITH SAMSUNG ELECTRONICS CO. ARISING IN ANY WAY FROM THIS EULA OR YOUR USE OF THE SOFTWARE SHALL BE RESOLVED EXCLUSIVELY THROUGH FINAL AND BINDING ARBITRATION, AND NOT BY A COURT OR JURY. Any such dispute shall not be combined or consolidated with any other person's or entity's claim or dispute, and specifically, without limitation of the foregoing, shall not under any circumstances proceed as part of a class action. The arbitration shall be conducted before a single arbitrator, whose award may not exceed, in form or amount, the relief allowed by the applicable law. The

arbitration shall be conducted according to the American Arbitration Association (AAA) Commercial Arbitration Rules applicable to consumer disputes. This arbitration provision is entered pursuant to the Federal Arbitration Act. The laws of the State of Texas, without reference to its choice of laws principles, shall govern the interpretation of the EULA and all disputes that are subject to this arbitration provision. The arbitrator shall decide all issues of interpretation and application of this arbitration provision and the EULA. For any arbitration in which your total damage claims, exclusive of attorney fees and expert witness fees, are \$5,000.00 or less ("Small Claim"), the arbitrator may, if you prevail, award your reasonable attorney fees, expert witness fees and costs as part of any award, but may not grant Samsung Electronics Co. its attorney fees, expert witness fees or costs unless it is determined that the claim was brought in bad faith. In a Small Claim case, you shall be required to pay no more than half of the total administrative, facility and arbitrator fees, or \$50.00 of such fees, whichever is less, and Samsung Electronics Co. shall pay the remainder of such fees. Administrative, facility and arbitrator fees for arbitrations in which your total damage claims, exclusive of attorney fees and expert witness fees, exceed \$5,000.00 ("Large Claim") shall be determined according to AAA rules. In a Large Claim case, the arbitrator may grant to the prevailing party, or apportion among the parties, reasonable attorney fees, expert witness fees and costs. Judgment may be entered on the arbitrator's award in any court of competent jurisdiction. This arbitration provision also applies to claims against Samsung Electronics Co.'s employees, representatives and affiliates if any such claim arises from the licensing or use of the Software. You may opt out of this dispute resolution procedure by providing notice to Samsung Electronics Co. no later than 30 calendar days from the date of the first consumer purchaser's purchase of this device. To opt out, you must send notice by e-mail to optout@sta.samsung.com, with the subject line: "Arbitration Opt Out." You must include in the opt out e-mail (a) your name and address; (b) the date on which the device was purchased: (c) the device model name or model number: and (d) the IMEI or MEID or Serial Number, as applicable, if you have it (the IMEI or MEID or Serial Number can be found (i) on the device box: (ii) on the device information screen, which can be found under "Settings;" (iii) on a label on the back of the device beneath the battery, if the battery is removable; and (iv) on the outside of the device if the battery is not removable). Alternatively, you may opt out by calling 1-888-987-4357 no later than 30 calendar days from the date of

the first consumer purchaser's purchase of the device and providing the same information. These are the only two forms of notice that will be effective to opt out of this dispute resolution procedure. Opting out of this dispute resolution procedure will not affect your use of the device or its preloaded Software, and you will continue to enjoy the benefits of this license.

16. ENTIRE AGREEMENT; SEVERABILITY. This EULA is the entire agreement between you and Samsung Electronics Co. relating to the Software and supersedes all prior or contemporaneous oral or written communications, proposals and representations with respect to the Software or any other subject matter covered by this EULA. If any provision of this EULA is held to be void, invalid, unenforceable or illegal, the other provisions shall continue in full force and effect. [101212]

## Index

#### **Numerics** Airplane Dongle 196 Mode 37 Pairing 196 2 Sec Pause Airplane Mode 269 Pairing Your Devices 196 Adding 73 **Alarm** Re-pairing a Device 197 4G 257 Setting 261 Set Up Hardware 195 A Turning Off 262 Streaming Videos 198 Accessibility Voice Control 305 Troubleshooting 197 Install Web Scripts 312 Alerts **AllShare Play** Accessing Presidential 131 Configuring Settings 190 Recently-used applications 57 Alerts on Call 278 Group Cast 161, 194 Voice mail 22 Allow Diagnostics 17, 309 Sharing Files 192 Accessory 310 **Allowing Mock Locations** 313 Sharing Media 193 Audio Applications 310 **AllShare** Uploading Images to Web 192 Audio Output 310 Definitions 203 Uploading Video to Web 193 Dock Sound 310 **AllShare Cast** Web Storage Setup 191 Screen Display 310 AllShareCast Hub 204 Activation 273 Accounts and Sync On 196, 198, 274 AMBER Alerts Adding Contacts 118 AllShare Cast Hub 34 Disable 132 Add 2 Sec Pause 75, 108 **AMBER alerts** 131 1st Time Pairing 196 Add to Favorites 122 Activation on Device 196 Amergency alerts Adjusting Connecting 195 Message Settings 131 Call volume 83 Disconnecting Your Device 196

Android Beam 271 Game Hub 44 On 272 Google Mail 45, 210 Google Maps 46, 215 Answering a call 73 **Answering Kev** 278 Google+ 45 Hide 41 Any Key Answering 311 Internet 45, 211 Application cache and data Kies Air 45 Latitude 46 Clearing 226 **Application Menus** Local 46 Navigating through 56 Media Hub 46 **Applications** 41 Messaging 46 AllShare Play 42 messaging 217 Amazon 42 Messenger 46 Calculator 42, 205 Mobile Hotspot 47 Calendar 42 More Services 47 Camera 43, 206 Music Hub 47 ChatON 43 Music Player 47 My files 47 Clock 43 Contacts 43 My T-Mobile 42 Downloads 44 Navigation 48 Phone 48 Dropbox 44 Email 44, 209 Play Books 48 Flipboard 44 Play Movies 48 Gallery 44 Play Musc 48

Play Store 48 S Memo 49 S Suggest 49 S Voice 49 Samsung Apps 49 Search 49 Settings 49 Sharing with Others 59 Show Hidden 41 Shutting Down 24 Storage Used 291 T-Mobile Name ID 49 T-Mobile TV 50 Using the Camcorder 164 Using the Camera 150 Video Player 50, 235 Visual Voicemail 50 Voice Recorder 50, 235 VPN Client 50

YouTube 51, 236 **Applications and Development** 202 aggA

Close 234

Apps Screen	Removal 12	Microhone Function 248
Customizing 41	Wall Charger 13	Off 246, 266
Area Code	Battery Cover	On 246, 266
Auto Assign 280	Removal 8	Outgoing Headset Condition 278
Audio	Replace 9	Paring Devices 247
Output Mode 310	Battery Life	Review Downloaded Files 247
Auto Redial 280	Extending 15	Scan for Devices 247
Auto Reject	Battery Usage 289	Scanning for other Devices 267
Configuration 74	Battery Use & Safety 325	Sending Contact Information 249
Auto Reject List 277	Bigger Font	Sending Contacts Via 249
Auto Reject Mode 277	Setting 312	Sending Namecard 115
Automatic Answering 278	Bing	Set Visibility 247
Automatic Restore 308	Set Search Engine 244	Settings 246
В	Blacklist	Status indicators 246
Back up	Adding 111	Switching to Headset during call
My Account 308	Bluetooth 266	84
My Data 308	About 245	Turning on and off 245, 266
Backup and Restore 308	Change Name 246	Visibility 267
Battery	Configure Device Settings 248	Visible Time-Out 247
Charging 13	Deleting a Paired Device 249	Browser
Display Percentage 15, 286	Device Name 267	Adding bookmarks 242
Extending Life 15	Disconnecting a Paired Device	Deleting bookmarks 242
Installing 12	249	Easier to Read Pages 244
Low Battery Indicator 15	Media Audio 248	Emptying cookies 242
356		

Entering a URL 239 Inverted Display 244 Navigation 238 Options 238 Quick Controls 245 Search Engine 244 Settings 243 Bubble Options 128 Calculator Scientific Functions 205 Calendar 205, 259 Creating an event 260 Settings 260 Sync 259 Calibration 286 Call Settings 74 Voice Control 305 Call Alert 278 Call Vibrations 278

Call Answering/Ending 278 Call Barring 280 **Call Forwarding** 278 Configuring 279 Call Functions 69 Answering 73 Background Calling 70 Ending 70 Ending a Call 70 Ending via Status Bar 71 Equalizer 278 Making a Multi-Party Call 85 Pause Dialing 75 Redialing the last number 76 Wait dialing 76 Call Functions Vibrate 278 Call Rejection 74, 277 Call Settings 277 Additional Settings 280 Equalizer 280 General 277 Call Status Tones 278

**Call Vibrations** 278 **Call Volume** Adjusting 83 Extra Volume 83, 278 Call Waiting 87, 280 Caller ID 280 Calling Using Wi-Fi 79 Calls Auto Reject 277 Making a 69 Multi-party 85 Mutina 84 Camcorder 164 Accessing the Video Folder 168 Options 166 Shooting Video 165 Camera 149 Camera Options 151 Default Storage Location 154 Enabling Share Shot 157 Lock Screen Shortcut 298 Taking Pictures 150 Voice Control 306

## Camercorder Taking Pictures During Video 1 Care and Maintenance 331 Charging battery 13 ChatON 145 Adding a Buddy 146 Adding New Buddy 146 Buddy photo share 161 Chatting On 147 Deleting Bubble 147 Register Service 146 Children and Cell Phones 321 Clearing Application cache and data 226 Clock 298 Closing Apps 234 CMAS 131, 132 Commercial Mobile Alerting Sys (CMAS) 324 Configuration Initial 16 Connections

Accessing the Internet 238

67	
6	
tem	

Contact

Adding a Number to Existing 108
Adding a Pause or Wait 108
Adding Your Facebook Friends
119
Additional Options 120
Deleting 109
Display Options 117, 118, 120
Displaying Contacts by Name 120
Export List to microSD 251, 308
Filtering 120

Copying to microSD Card 116

Copying to SIM Card 116

Creating a New 103

Joining 112 New From Keypad 105

Photo 163

Options 111

Options 109

Options 110

Contact Menus

**Contact Entry** 

Contact List

**Contacts** 

First Name 120 Groups 121 Last Name First 120 Merge with Google 109 Merge with Samsung Account 109 Reject List 111 Sending All 115 Setting Default Location 110 Settings 120 Share Namecard Via 111 Sharing/Sending 114 Contacts List 69 Context Menus 108, 110 Navigation 57 Using 57 Cookies Emptying 242 Copying Contact 116 **Corporate Email** Account Syncronization 293 Add Account 293

CPU Usage	Camcorder 20, 149, 167	Overview 173
Display 313	Camera 20, 149	Registering Your DivX Device 173
Creating a Playlist 186	Camera Storage 154	Registration Code 315
Creating and sending	Deleting	Do cell phones pose a health hazard?
Messages 124	Multiple Messages 129	317
Customizing	Single Bubble 129	Dock
Home screens 57	Single Message 129	Sound 310
D	Deleting a contact 109	Dongle
Data	Desk Clock 207	AllShare Cast Hub 196
Restrict Background Data 268	Configuring 263	Downloading
Data Limit	Desktop Backup Password 313	New application 224
Setting 268	Device	Downloads 207
Data Roaming 269	Reset 309	Internet Downloads 207
Activate/Deactivate 268, 270	Device Options	Other Downloads 207
Data Usage	Screen 283	Dropbox
Cycle 268	Display	Uploading Picture 209
Limiting 268	Icons 31	E
Date	Settings 31	Edit Page 58
Selecting Format 310	Status Bar 31	Email 133
Date and Time 310	Using Negative Colors 312	Changing Signature 136, 141
Default Notifications	Display / Touch-Screen 329	Composing 135
Settings 284	Displaying your phone number 69	Configuring Settings 136
Default Storage	DivX	Creating an Internet Account 134
Assigning 149	Locating VOD Number 173	Internet Email 134

Opening 133	Equalizei	raciory uata reset 00
Refreshing Messages 135	In Call 280	Favorites Tab 122
Sending 120	In-Call 280	FCC Hearing Aid Compatibility (HAC)
Wi-Fi Download of Attachments	Erasing files from	<b>Regulations for Wireless Devices</b> 336
136, 141	Memory card 67	FCC Notice and Cautions 338
Emergancy Alerts 131	Evernote 228	Fixed Dialing Numbers 281
Emergency	Exchange Email 137	Flipboard 210
Alert Preview 131	Account Setup 137	Folder
Alerts 131	Composing 140	Create 40
Emergency Alert	Configuring Settings 140	Font
Configuration 132	Deleting Message 140	Size 286
Emergency Alerts	Opening 140	Style 286
AMBER 131	Refreshing Messages 140	Font Size
Imminent Extreme 131	Exposure to Radio Frequency (RF)	Caption 237
Severe 131	Signals 317	Changing 312
Emergency Calls 330	Extreme Alert	Minimum Setting 244
Making 71	Disable 132	Ğ
With SIM 72	F	Gallery
Without SIM 71	Face Unlock 295	Folder Options 160
Emoticons 126	Facial Recognition 295	Image Options 160
Ending	Factory Data Reset 309	Opening 171
A call 70	Prior To 308	Picture-In-Picture 172
Entering Text 92	1.16. 10 000	Slideshow Settings 160
Using T9 Trace 93		
-		

Egotory data repot 60

Equalizar

Opening 125

Game Hub 210	Signing In 143
Games	Viewing 144
Volume 283	Google
Gestures	Account Management Settings
Browse Image 55	292
Overview 54	Account Syncronization 292
Screen Capture 55	Add Account 292
Shake to Update 55	Adding a Sync Account 292
Tilt to Zoom 55	Create New Account 19
Getting Started 7	Merge Contacts 109
Battery 12	Retrieving Password 19
Battery Cover 8	Set Search Engine 244
Locking/Unlocking the Device 18	Signing into Your Account 19
microSD card 11	Voice Typing 92
SIM Card 9	Google Books 222
Switching Device On/Off 17	Google Docs 228
Voice Mail 22	Google Mail
<b>Gmail</b> 143, 210	see also Gmail 143
Composing a Message 143	Google Maps
Creating an Additional Account	Enabling a location source 215
144	Opening a map 216
Opening 143	Google Music 178, 223
Other Options 143	Google Places
Refreshing 143	See also Local 214

**Google Search** Settings 314 Google Talk 50, 234 **Google Voice Typing** Configuring 100, 305 Using 101 **GPS & AGPS** 329 **GPS Tag** 153 **GPU** Force Rendering 313 **Group Cast** 161, 194, 209, 235 Sharing an Image 162 Groups Adding an Member to an Existing Group 121 Creating a new caller group 121 Deleting 122 Deleting a Caller Group 122 Editing a Caller Group 122 Removing an Entry 121 Settings 122 **Gyro Sensor Calibration** 286 Gyroscope Calibration 286

н	Home screens	Incoming Call
Handwriting 94	Customizing 57	Vibration Setting 284
Haptic Feedback	HSPA+ 257	Indicator icons 31
Turn On/Off 289	I	Information Ticker 298
Vibrate 285	Icons	International Call 75
Vibration Setting 284	Description 31	International Calls
HDR 151	Indicator 31	Making 75
Headset	Status 31	Internet 238
In call Settings 278	Images	Clear Cookies 243
Health and Safety Information 317	Assigning as a Contact icon 163	Search 239
Hearing Aids 279	Assigning as wallpaper 164	Set Home Page 243
Hidden Applictions	Transferring 251, 308	Internet Calls
Show 41	Verifying 251, 308	Adding SIP Accounts 279
Hold	Importing and Exporting	Settigns 279
Placing a Call on Hold 83	To micro SIM card 120	Internet Downloads 207
Home 38	In Call	Internet Email 133
Home City	Options 82	IP Address 315
Setting 298	In call	J
Home Key 38	Options 84	Joining
Home Screen	Sound Equalizer 278	Contact information 112
Assigning a New 59	Incognito 240	K
Changing Wallpaper 63	Create Window 240	Kies Air
Menu Settings 40 Overview 38	Exit Window 240	Before Using 251

L	Logs 88	Merge Calls 85
Language	Accessing 88	Merge with Google 109
Select 302	Accessing from Notifications 89	Message
LDAP 103, 110	Altering Numbers 90	Options 125
Live Shooting 167	Erasing 90	Read 127
Live Wallpaper	Low battery indicator 15	Reply 128, 147
Selecting 63	M	Thread Options 128
Local 214	Making	Threads 128
<b>Location and Google Services</b> 294	Emergency Calls 71	Message Search 130
Lock Screen 294	International Calls 75	Message threads 128
Camera Quick Access 298	New call 69	Messaging
Changing Wallpaper 64	Managing Applications	Adding Attachments 126
Clock 298	Clearing Application Cache 290	Additional Text 127
Dual Clock 298	Uninstalling Third-party	Composing Options 126
Options 298	Applications 290	Creating and sending 124
Ripple Effect 298	Market	Creating and Sending Text
Say Wake-Up Command 298	see Play Store 223	Messages 124
Shortcuts 298	Marking contact	Deleting a message 129
Showing Owner Info 299	As a default 114	Google Mail 143
Ticker 298	Media Hub 175, 217	Icons on the Status Bar 123
Viewing Missed Calls 91	Creating a New Account 175	Insert Smiley 126
Weather 298	Using 176	Menu Options 125
	Memory card	Options 125
	Frasing files from the 67	Settings 130

Erasing files from the 67

Signing into Google Mail 143 Text Templates 132 Types of Messages 123 Viewing new 127 micro SIM Card 10 Changing Exisitng PIN 300 Importing and Exporting 120 Insertion 10 Lock 300 Removal 10 Setting Up Lock 300 microSD Card Insertion 11 Removal 11 Microsoft Exchange 103, 133 Missed Call Viewing from Lock Screen 91 Mobile Data Activate/Deactivate 268 Set Data Limit 268 Mobile HotSpot 257 Activating 257 Changing Password 258 Connecting 258 364

Mobile Networks 269 Data Roaming 269 Mobile NetworksUse Packet Data 269 Mobile Web 238 Entering Text in the Mobile Web Browser 239 Navigating with the Mobile Web 238 Using Bookmarks 241 Mobilel ife Contacts Backup 103 Mono Audio Setup 312 Motion Function Activation 287 Using to Unlock 295 **Motion Settings** 287 Mounting the SD card 66 **Multi-Party Call** 85 Dropping One Participant 87 Private conversation 86

Multi-party call Setting up 85 Multi-party calls 85 Multi-Tasking Background Calling 70 Watching Videos 172 Music 218 Volume 283 Music App Adding Songs to Playlists 183 Changing Library View 179 Changing Settings 180 Creating a Playlist 183 Deleting a Playlist 183 Listening 180 Music Application 178 Now Playing Screen 181 Options While Playing 182 Plaving 180 Playing a Playlist 183 Searching for Music 180

Tab Options 181

Music File Extensions MusicPlaver 184 Non-Market Applications 225 3GP 184 Notification N AAC 184 Vibration Setting 284 Namecard AAC+ 184 **Notification Bar** 36 Sending 114 eAAC+ 184 Using 36 Sending All 115 M4A 184 **Notifications** Share Via 114 MP3 184 Volume 283 Navigating MP4 184 n Application Menus 56 WMA 184 Sub-Menus 56 Offensive Words Music Files Through Screens 51 Block 306 Removing 187 Navigation On/Off Switch 17 Transferring 187 Fnable GPS 220 **Operating Environment** 334 Music Hub 188 Go Home 221 Organizer Making a Purchase 189 Options 221 Calculator 205 Music Player **Negative Colors** 312 World Clock 262 Adding Music 186 Network connection Other Downloads 207 Creating a Playlist 186 Adding a new 255 Other Important Safety Information Editing a Playlist 187 New applications 339 Making a Song a Ringtone 185 Out of Office Downloading 224 Options 185 NFC Message 141 Plaving Music 184 Turning On 231 Settings 141 Removing Music 187 NFC (Near Field Communication) 271 Outlook 133 Using Playlists 186 Noise Reduction 85 Synchronizing 293

Voice Control 306

Overview	Picture	Screen Power 289
Home Screen 38	Set As 163	Power Saving Mode 288
Owner Information 299	Sharing via Group Cast 162	Predictive Text
P	Streaming from Gallery 162	Activation 98, 304
Passwords	Picture-In-Picture 172	Using 98
Make Visible 300	Pictures	Using XT9 97
Pause	Instant Sharing 157	Prepend
Adding to a Contact 108	Sharing 156, 158	Area Code 281
Pause Dialing 75	Play Books 222	Primary Shortcuts 40
Personal Localized Alerting Network	Play Music 223	Adding and Deleting 61
(PLAN) 324	Play Store 223	Customizing 61
Personalized EQ 278	Quick Access 41	Replacing 61
Phone	Play Videos	Q
Icons 31	Picture-In-Picture 172	Quick Dialing 70
Switching on/off 17	Pointer Speed	Quick Messaging 125
Phone number	Configuration 307	R
Finding 69	Power 37	Recently-used Applications
Phone Ringtone 284	Auto Adjust Screen Tone 286	Accessing 57
Phone Vibration 284	Power Saving 37	Redialing the last number 76
Photo Editor	Background Color 289	Reducing Exposure
Download and Install 169	CPU Power 288	Hands-Free Kits and Other
Photos	Haptic Feedback 289	Accessories 320
Options 155, 161, 168	LCD Adjustment 286	Reject Call
Sharing 155, 161, 168	Learning About 289	Rejection Messages 277
366		.,

Reject Calls Ringtone Enabling 93 Device 284 Predictive Text 97 Managing 74 Reiect List Volume 283 Settings 302 Add To 75 Ripple 298 Symbol/Numeric Mode 96 Add to 89, 90 XT9 Advanced Settings 303 Ripple Effect Lock Screen 298 Adding 111 Samsung Kevpad Auto Reject 75 Entering Symbols 97 Removing 111 Samsung Mobile Products and S Beam 272 Rejection List Recycling 327 On 158, 272 Assigning Multiple Numbers 74 Save a Number Sharing Pictures 158 Assigning Single Numbers 75 From Keypad 105 S Memo Rejection Messages 277 Scan for Nearby Devices 185 Creating a New Memo 226 Reset 309 Screen S Voice 229 Reset Device 309 Home 38 Require Wake-Up 298 Navigation 51 Responsible Listening 332 Set Wake-Up Command 298 Restarting Screen Capture 55, 162, 194 Using 78 Device 18 Taking a Screen Shot 163 SafeSearch 306 Restore 308 Screen Lock Samsung Account Restrict Set Up 296 Creating 20 Sounds 285 Background Data 268 Merge Contacts 109 Restricting Children's Access to Your Screen Lock Pattern Set up 176 Mobile device 338 Changing 297 Samsung Kevboard 93 Creating 296 ABC Mode 96 Deleting 297 Changing the Input Type 95

Screen Rotation 37	Setting up	Adding from Home Screen 60
Auto-Rotate 286	Voicemail 22	Deleting from a Screen 61
Screen Sharing	Settings 264	Managing 59
Via Group Cast 162	Accessing 264	Primary 40
Screen Timeout 285	Browser 243	SIM
Screen Unlock	Contact list 120	Micro 7, 10
Face and Voice Unlock 295	Display 31	see also micro SIM 10
Face Unlock 295	Enabling the GPS Satellites 294	SIP
Motion 295	Enabling Wireless Locations 293	Add Accounts 279
Swipe 294	Messaging 130	see Internet Calls 279
Screens	Wallpaper 63, 64	Slideshow
Adding and Deleting 58	Setup	Settings 160
Customizing 57	Initial 16	Smart Alarm 262
Rearranging 59	Severe Alert	Smart Practices While Driving 324
SD card	Disable 132	Smart Stay 285
Communicating With 66	Share Applications 59	Snooze 262
Mounting the 66	Share Shot 151, 157	Repeat 261
Unmounting 67	Configuring 158	SNS 118
Search	Enabling 157	Social Network
Settings 314	Stop Sharing 158	Adding Facebook Contacts 119
Search Engine 244	Taking Images 158	Resync 119
Sending a Namecard 114	Shortcuts	Social Networking
Setting an alarm 261	Adding from Application Screen	Adding Contacts From 118
	60	

Software Update 315 SWYPE see USB Tethering 256 see also T9 Trace 93 Song Text Set As 185 System Manager 16, 309 Adjusting Size 244 Minimum Font Size 244 Sound Profiles 283 **System Tone** Settings 285 Sounds Soom Amount on Double Tap 244 Turn Off All 312 Systeme Text Input Speakerphone Volume 283 Methods 92 Turning on and off 84 **Text Input Method** Specific Absorption Rate (SAR) Selecting 92 **T9 Trace** 93, 97, 303 Certification Information 322 **Text Templates** 132 Activation 93 Create Your Own 133 Speed Dial Enabling 93 Text To Speech 307 Changing an entry 77 see Swype 97, 303 Making a call 78 Text-to-speech Task Manger Configuration 307 Removing an entry 78 Overview 24 Setting up entries 77 **Third-Party Applications** 290 TecTile Standard Limited Warranty 341 Uninstalling 226 Joining a Wi-Fi 233 Status Bar 31 **Time Management** Programming 232 Calendar 259 Strict Mode 313 Programming a Text Message Sub-Menus Time Zone 233 Navigation 56 Selecting 310 TecTiles 231 SugarSync Timer Installation 231 Setup 191 Automatic Answering 278 Tethering 271 Switching to a Bluetooth Tools Active Icon 256 During a call 84 Camera 150 Disconnecting 257

Touches	Unmounting	Intensity Setup 284
Show 313	SD card 67	Video
TrackPad	Usage	Volume 283
Configure 307	Battery 289	Video Player
Transferring Large Files 158, 272	USB Connections	Picture-In-Picture 172
Transferring Music Files 187	As Storage Device 251	Sharing Videos 172
TTS 307	USB Debugging 312	Videos
TTY Mode 279	Disabling 66	Default Storage Location 167
U	USB Settings	Options 155
<b>UL Certified Travel Charger</b> 328	As Storage Device 251	Vlingo 306
Understanding Your Device 25	USB Tethering 256	Voice Commands
Back View 29	Activating 256, 271	For Apps 305
Display 30	Use GPS Satellites 215, 220, 294	Voice Control
Features 25	Use Packet Data 269	Alarm 305
Front View 27	Use Wireless Networks 215, 220,	Camera 306
Home 38	293	Incoming Calls 305
Side Views 29	Using Favorites	Music 306
Uninstalling	Adding Favorites 242	Voice Controls
Third-party applications 226	Deleting a Favorite 242	Activation 305
Unknown Sources 225	Editing Favorites 242	Voice Input
Unlock	V	Recognition 306
Options 298	Vibrate 278	Voice mail
Using Face 295	Vibration	Accessing 22
Using Voice 295	Device 284	Accessing from another phone 2
370		

Setting up 22 Managing 63 During Sleep 265 Voice Recognizer 306 **Warranty Information** 341 Manually Adding Network 266 Voice Search 306 Manually scan for network 255 Weather Voice Typing 92 Setting 298 Off 255 Configuring 100, 305 Web 238 On 254, 255, 264 Settings 264 Using 101 History 242 Voicemail 282 Web applications Show Usage 268 **Volume Settings** enable downloading 250 Status icons 254 Adjusting 283 Web Scripts Wi-Fi Calling 9 VPN Install 312 Activating 80, 275 Connection Preferences 81, 276 Adding 274 Widgets Settings 274 Adding and Removing 62 Icons 82 VPN Client 236 Google Talk 50 Launching 81 W Moving to a Different Screen 62 Settings 81, 276 Wi-Fi Direct 272 Settings 49, 230 Wait 76, 108 Stopwatch 263 Activate and Connect 273 Adding to a Contact 108 Wi-Fi Assigning a Name 273 Wait dialing 76 About 253 On 157, 273 Wallpaper Activating 80, 253, 264 World Clock Home and Lock Screens 63 Advanced settings 255 DST Settings 262 Wallpapers Calling 79 WPA2 PSK 257, 258 Assigning from Gallery 161 Connecting to 254 Changing Home Screen 63 Deactivating 255 Changing Lock Screen 64

Direct Connection 272

Changing via Settings Menu 63



## Yahoo! 244 YouTube

High Quality 237 High Qulaity 201 Settings 237